

**TEI Customization for the Data Collection *Lectures*
that *Link: European Digital Humanities Lecture Series*
generated by Roma 4.10**

written by Ulrike Henny-Krahmer, Fernanda Alvares Freire, and Erik Renz
2025

Contents

1. Introduction	<u>1</u>
2. Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture	<u>1</u>
3. TEI Encoding of Lecture Series	<u>1</u>
3.1. Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures	<u>1</u>
3.2. Encoding Individual Lectures	<u>1</u>
3.2.1. Titles and Abstracts	<u>2</u>
3.2.2. Keywords	<u>3</u>
3.2.3. Realization (Lecture Modality)	<u>3</u>
3.2.4. Speakers, Titles, and Affiliation	<u>3</u>
3.2.5. Hosts and Organizers	<u>4</u>
3.3. Creating IDs	<u>4</u>
3.4. Capturing Language	<u>5</u>
3.5. Capturing Links	<u>5</u>
3.6. Capturing Organizations	<u>5</u>
3.6.1. Universities	<u>6</u>
3.6.2. Research Institutions	<u>7</u>
3.6.3. GLAM Institutions	<u>7</u>
3.6.4. Companies	<u>7</u>
3.7. Capturing Persons	<u>7</u>
3.8. Capturing Locations	<u>8</u>
Appendix A. TEI Specifications	<u>9</u>
Appendix A.1. Elements	<u>9</u>
Appendix A.1.1. <TEI>	<u>9</u>
Appendix A.1.2. <affiliation>	<u>11</u>
Appendix A.1.3. <availability>	<u>13</u>
Appendix A.1.4. <bibl>	<u>15</u>
Appendix A.1.5. <bloc>	<u>17</u>
Appendix A.1.6. <body>	<u>18</u>
Appendix A.1.7. <catDesc>	<u>21</u>
Appendix A.1.8. <category>	<u>22</u>
Appendix A.1.9. <classDecl>	<u>23</u>
Appendix A.1.10. <country>	<u>24</u>
Appendix A.1.11. <date>	<u>26</u>
Appendix A.1.12. <desc>	<u>29</u>
Appendix A.1.13. <editor>	<u>30</u>
Appendix A.1.14. <encodingDesc>	<u>32</u>
Appendix A.1.15. <event>	<u>33</u>
Appendix A.1.16. <eventName>	<u>36</u>
Appendix A.1.17. <fileDesc>	<u>39</u>
Appendix A.1.18. <forename>	<u>40</u>
Appendix A.1.19. <gender>	<u>42</u>
Appendix A.1.20. <idno>	<u>44</u>
Appendix A.1.21. <item>	<u>46</u>
Appendix A.1.22. <licence>	<u>48</u>

Appendix A.1.23.	<list>	<u>49</u>
Appendix A.1.24.	<listEvent>	<u>53</u>
Appendix A.1.25.	<listOrg>	<u>55</u>
Appendix A.1.26.	<listPerson>	<u>57</u>
Appendix A.1.27.	<listPlace>	<u>58</u>
Appendix A.1.28.	<name>	<u>60</u>
Appendix A.1.29.	<nameLink>	<u>62</u>
Appendix A.1.30.	<note>	<u>63</u>
Appendix A.1.31.	<org>	<u>65</u>
Appendix A.1.32.	<p>	<u>67</u>
Appendix A.1.33.	<particDesc>	<u>69</u>
Appendix A.1.34.	<person>	<u>70</u>
Appendix A.1.35.	<place>	<u>72</u>
Appendix A.1.36.	<placeName>	<u>74</u>
Appendix A.1.37.	<profileDesc>	<u>76</u>
Appendix A.1.38.	<ptr>	<u>77</u>
Appendix A.1.39.	<pubPlace>	<u>79</u>
Appendix A.1.40.	<publicationStmt>	<u>80</u>
Appendix A.1.41.	<publisher>	<u>81</u>
Appendix A.1.42.	<resp>	<u>83</u>
Appendix A.1.43.	<respStmt>	<u>84</u>
Appendix A.1.44.	<roleName>	<u>86</u>
Appendix A.1.45.	<settingDesc>	<u>87</u>
Appendix A.1.46.	<sourceDesc>	<u>88</u>
Appendix A.1.47.	<surname>	<u>89</u>
Appendix A.1.48.	<taxonomy>	<u>91</u>
Appendix A.1.49.	<teiHeader>	<u>93</u>
Appendix A.1.50.	<term>	<u>95</u>
Appendix A.1.51.	<text>	<u>97</u>
Appendix A.1.52.	<title>	<u>98</u>
Appendix A.1.53.	<titleStmt>	<u>101</u>
Appendix A.2.	Model classes	<u>102</u>
Appendix A.2.1.	model.addressLike	<u>102</u>
Appendix A.2.2.	model.attributable	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.3.	model.availabilityPart	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.4.	model.biblLike	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.5.	model.biblPart	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.6.	model.common	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.7.	model.dateLike	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.8.	model.descLike	<u>103</u>
Appendix A.2.9.	model.divBottom	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.10.	model.divPart	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.11.	model.divTop	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.12.	model.divTopPart	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.13.	model.emphLike	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.14.	model.encodingDescPart	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.15.	model.eventLike	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.16.	model.global	<u>104</u>
Appendix A.2.17.	model.highlighted	<u>105</u>
Appendix A.2.18.	model.imprintPart	<u>105</u>
Appendix A.2.19.	model.inter	<u>105</u>
Appendix A.2.20.	model.labelLike	<u>105</u>
Appendix A.2.21.	model.limitedPhrase	<u>105</u>
Appendix A.2.22.	model.listLike	<u>105</u>

Appendix A.2.23.	model.nameLike	106
Appendix A.2.24.	model.nameLike.agent	106
Appendix A.2.25.	model.noteLike	106
Appendix A.2.26.	model.orgPart	106
Appendix A.2.27.	model.pLike	106
Appendix A.2.28.	model.pPart.data	106
Appendix A.2.29.	model.pPart.edit	107
Appendix A.2.30.	model.paraPart	107
Appendix A.2.31.	model.persNamePart	107
Appendix A.2.32.	model.persStateLike	107
Appendix A.2.33.	model.personLike	107
Appendix A.2.34.	model.personPart	107
Appendix A.2.35.	model.phrase	108
Appendix A.2.36.	model.placeLike	108
Appendix A.2.37.	model.placeNamePart	108
Appendix A.2.38.	model.placeStateLike	108
Appendix A.2.39.	model.profileDescPart	108
Appendix A.2.40.	model.ptrLike	108
Appendix A.2.41.	model.publicationStmtPart.agency	108
Appendix A.2.42.	model.publicationStmtPart.detail	109
Appendix A.2.43.	model.resource	109
Appendix A.2.44.	model.respLike	109
Appendix A.2.45.	model.teiHeaderPart	109
Appendix A.3.	Attribute classes	109
Appendix A.3.1.	att.anchoring	109
Appendix A.3.2.	att.cReferencing	110
Appendix A.3.3.	att.calendarSystem	110
Appendix A.3.4.	att.canonical	111
Appendix A.3.5.	att.cmc	112
Appendix A.3.6.	att.dateable	113
Appendix A.3.7.	att.dateable.custom	114
Appendix A.3.8.	att.dateable.iso	116
Appendix A.3.9.	att.dateable.w3c	117
Appendix A.3.10.	att.datcat	118
Appendix A.3.11.	att.declarable	122
Appendix A.3.12.	att.declaring	122
Appendix A.3.13.	att.dimensions	123
Appendix A.3.14.	att.docStatus	124
Appendix A.3.15.	att.editLike	125
Appendix A.3.16.	att.fragmentable	125
Appendix A.3.17.	att.global	126
Appendix A.3.18.	att.global.linking	128
Appendix A.3.19.	att.global.rendition	130
Appendix A.3.20.	att.global.responsibility	131
Appendix A.3.21.	att.global.source	132
Appendix A.3.22.	att.internetMedia	133
Appendix A.3.23.	att.locatable	133
Appendix A.3.24.	att.naming	134
Appendix A.3.25.	att.personal	134
Appendix A.3.26.	att.placement	135
Appendix A.3.27.	att.pointing	135
Appendix A.3.28.	att.ranging	137
Appendix A.3.29.	att.sortable	137
Appendix A.3.30.	att.typed	138

Appendix A.3.31.	att.written	<u>139</u>
Appendix A.4.	Macros	<u>139</u>
Appendix A.4.1.	macro.limitedContent	<u>139</u>
Appendix A.4.2.	macro.paraContent	<u>139</u>
Appendix A.4.3.	macro.phraseSeq	<u>139</u>
Appendix A.4.4.	macro.phraseSeq.limited	<u>140</u>
Appendix A.4.5.	macro.specialPara	<u>140</u>
Appendix A.5.	Datatypes	<u>140</u>
Appendix A.5.1.	teidata.certainty	<u>140</u>
Appendix A.5.2.	teidata.count	<u>141</u>
Appendix A.5.3.	teidata.duration.iso	<u>141</u>
Appendix A.5.4.	teidata.duration.w3c	<u>141</u>
Appendix A.5.5.	teidata.enumerated	<u>142</u>
Appendix A.5.6.	teidata.gender	<u>142</u>
Appendix A.5.7.	teidata.language	<u>143</u>
Appendix A.5.8.	teidata.name	<u>144</u>
Appendix A.5.9.	teidata.numeric	<u>144</u>
Appendix A.5.10.	teidata.outputMeasurement	<u>145</u>
Appendix A.5.11.	teidata.pattern	<u>145</u>
Appendix A.5.12.	teidata.pointer	<u>145</u>
Appendix A.5.13.	teidata.probCert	<u>146</u>
Appendix A.5.14.	teidata.probability	<u>146</u>
Appendix A.5.15.	teidata.replacement	<u>146</u>
Appendix A.5.16.	teidata.sex	<u>146</u>
Appendix A.5.17.	teidata.temporal.iso	<u>147</u>
Appendix A.5.18.	teidata.temporal.w3c	<u>147</u>
Appendix A.5.19.	teidata.text	<u>148</u>
Appendix A.5.20.	teidata.truthValue	<u>148</u>
Appendix A.5.21.	teidata.version	<u>148</u>
Appendix A.5.22.	teidata.versionNumber	<u>148</u>
Appendix A.5.23.	teidata.word	<u>149</u>
Appendix A.5.24.	teidata.xTruthValue	<u>149</u>
Appendix A.5.25.	teidata.xpath	<u>149</u>

1. Introduction

This document describes how the TEI standard was customized for the project *Lectures that Link*. The project focuses on building a data collection of Digital Humanities lecture series hosted by European institutions between 2014 and early 2025. The primary emphasis is on the lecture series themselves, the individual lectures within these series, and the speakers involved. Detailed descriptions of who these data were collected and encoded in TEI are provided in the following sections, with examples included in the running text.

2. Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture

All data used in this project was exclusively sourced from publicly accessible websites, ensuring that only freely available information was included. Data behind authentication barriers, such as those requiring login credentials, was deliberately excluded from the collection process.

In addition to textual information about the lecture series found on individual websites, additional digital materials related to the events were incorporated into the project. These sources were accessed via hyperlinks found on the websites and include presentations, blog posts, related articles, and audiovisual content, such as videos.

While every effort has been made to ensure the dataset is comprehensive within the scope of the project, it does not claim to be exhaustive or definitive. Instead, it serves as a solid foundation for both the current and future analyses.

3. TEI Encoding of Lecture Series

3.1. Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures

All lecture series are recorded in the `<listEvent>` element, which is located within `<body>`, a sub-element of `<text>`. To accurately reflect the inherent structure of lecture series, the XML is organized hierarchically. The term *lecture series* implies a three-tiered structure:

1. The overarching series, representing the general lecture program.
2. Individual editions or rounds of a series, typically aligned with academic semesters or other specific time periods.
3. Individual lectures, which form the lowest hierarchical level, with most information.

To represent this hierarchy, the following approach is used:

Each lecture series is recorded within an `<event>` element, with the *type* attribute set to the value `lecture-series`. Additionally, the *where* attribute references the ID of the location where the series is hosted:

```
<event xml:id="ls10" type="lecture-series"
  where="#rostock">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Digital Humanities im Fokus: Methoden, Anwendungen und
    Perspektiven</eventName>
  <eventName xml:lang="en">Digital Humanities in Focus: Methods, Applications, and
    Perspectives</eventName>
</event>
```

The `<event>` element contains an `<eventName>` sub-element, which records the original name of the series. The *xml:lang* attribute specifies the language of the lecture series name. If official translations exist, multiple `<eventName>` elements may be listed sequentially, as can be seen above.

Each lecture series consists of at least one, but usually multiple `<event>` elements, each representing an instance of the lecture series, for instance, an academic term in which the series took place. These `<event>` elements include a *type* attribute with the value `lecture-series-term`, as well as the attributes *from* and *to* indicating the term's duration (year and month):

```
<event xml:id="ls10_t1"
  type="lecture-series-term" from="2023-04" to="2024-07">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Sommersemester 2023</eventName>
  <ptr type="programme"
    target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241114133706/https://www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/ringvorlesung/2023">
  </event>
```

If a consolidated program overview is available for a given term, a `<ptr>` element is included after the `<eventName>` element. The *type* attribute of `<ptr>` is set to the value `programme` to indicate its purpose.

After these term-level `<event>` elements, individual lectures are recorded, as explained in the following sections.

3.2. Encoding Individual Lectures

An individual lecture is recorded as an `<event>` element with the attribute *type* (with the value `lecture`) and with the attribute *when*, which specifies the date of the event in the format year-month-day. The structure of the content

within each `<event>` element remains consistent across all lectures. Therefore, it is described in the following subsections from top to bottom, using the example below:

```
<event xml:id="ls10_t4_l7" type="lecture"
when="2024-12-02">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte - Wie? und Warum? - Nachdenken eines
  Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>
  <note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">
    <p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatisieren.
    Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, wie Texte
    funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.
    KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerweise
    bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft kann auf
    Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>
    <p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert, wie große
    Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus ergeben sich
    unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der Kreis zum
    Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, dass seine
    Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der
    Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>
  </note>
  <note type="keywords">
    <term type="discipline"
      corresp="#german-studies #computer-science"/>
    <term type="topic"
      corresp="https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/commenting https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/machineLearning"/>
  </note>
  <note type="realization">
    <term type="speech">in person</term>
    <term type="audience">hybrid</term>
  </note>
  <ptr type="programme"
    target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241210104406/https://www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/ringvorlesung/2024-25/2024-12-02-17">
  <ptr type="slides"
    target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.14525161"/>
  <listPerson>
    <person role="speaker"
      corresp="#cap_clemens">
      <name>
        <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
      </name>
      <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
    </person>
    <person role="speaker"
      corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang">
      <name>
        <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
      </name>
      <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
    </person>
  </listPerson>
  <org role="host-institution"
    corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</event> [...]
<org role="organizer"
  corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"/>
```

3.2.1. Titles and Abstracts

At the beginning of each entry, the lecture title is recorded using an `<eventName>` element. The language of the title is specified via the `xml:lang` attribute.

Directly below the title, the abstract of the lecture follows. This is captured within a `<note>` element, which is characterized by the `type` attribute set to the value `abstract`. Additionally, the `xml:lang` attribute specifies the language of the abstract.

```
<eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte - Wie? und Warum? - Nachdenken eines
Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">
  <p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatisieren.
  Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, wie Texte
  funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.
  KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerweise
  bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft kann auf
  Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>
  <p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert, wie große
  Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus ergeben sich
  unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der Kreis zum
  Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, dass seine
  Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der
  Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>
</note>
```

As the example above already shows, the abstract text itself is recorded within one or more `<p>` elements. If a list is included within the abstract, a `<list>` element is used, with individual list items represented by `<item>` elements.

If the abstract contains formatting elements such as bold, italics, or hyperlinks, these are not explicitly marked up.

If an abstract is available, it is recorded within the `<note type="abstract">` tag. If no abstract is provided, the content of the note is set to "not found":

```
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">not found</note>
```

3.2.2. Keywords

Each recorded lecture is assigned keywords by the encoders to be able to analyze the distribution of disciplines, methods and topics across the lectures and lecture series. That is, the keywords are not collected from the websites of the lecture series but they are added by the editors of this data collection.

The keywords are stored inside of a `<note>` element, characterized by the attribute *type* with the value keywords. Within this `<note>` element, there are two `<term>` elements:

- One with `<type="discipline">`, specifying the academic discipline or disciplines covered by the talk.
- One with `<type="topics-llm">`, indicating the topics of the talk.

```
<note type="keywords">
  <term type="discipline"
    corresp="#literary-studies"/>
  <term type="topics-llm">evolution, cultural change, computational methods,
    literature trends, causal mechanisms</term>
</note>
```

In case that there is more than one discipline, it is collected in the *corresp* attribute of the same `<term>` element. We opted for this (instead of using an individual `<term>` element for each keyword) to facilitate later processing of the data and for a more compact encoding of the information. For the disciplines, we use a pre-defined list that we created on our own. The topics were generated with a script calling an LLM.

Both discipline and topic assignments are based on the lecture content. This classification relies on the abstract and title of the lecture. Since every lecture has a title but not necessarily an abstract, classification is always possible. However, a longer title or the presence of an abstract allows for a more precise categorization.

3.2.3. Realization (Lecture Modality)

The lecture modality is recorded in the `<note type="realization">` tag, specifying whether the lecture was held in person, hybrid, or online. The `<note>` element contains two `<term>` sub-elements that define the modality separately for speakers and audience members. These `<term>` elements use the *type* attribute to distinguish between the modality of the speech and of the audience:

- `<term type="speech">`: Describes how the speakers delivered the lecture.
- `<term type="audience">`: Describes how the audience attended the lecture.

```
<note type="realization">
  <term type="speech">in person</term>
  <term type="audience">hybrid</term>
</note>
```

The values for these elements are standardized to ensure consistency in data representation. The possible values are:

- in person: All participants (speakers or audience) were physically present at the lecture venue.
- hybrid: At least one participant (speaker or audience member) joined remotely, while others were present in person.
- online: All participants attended virtually; no one was physically present at the venue.

If a lecture was canceled, a fourth value, canceled, is used. In this case, as shown in the example below, the `<term type="audience">` tag is omitted since no audience attended:

canceled

3.2.4. Speakers, Titles, and Affiliation

The speakers of a lecture are recorded in a `<listPerson>` element. Each speaker is described using a `<person>` element with a *corresp* attribute that links to the corresponding person entry in the TEI header. The academic title (if provided) is stored within a `<roleName type="title">` element inside of the `<name>` element. The speaker's affiliation is captured within an `<affiliation>` element, referencing the corresponding institution, which is encoded in the TEI header. The information about the speakers, their affiliations, and the institutions is encoded in two places for the following reasons: on the one hand, we aim to have a centralized list of people and institutions in the TEI header, to which we can refer from individual events. On the other hand, the affiliations of people can change over time and the same is true for their titles. One person might not have a title at the moment of one event, but might have a title at another event later on, for instance, if someone completed his or her PhD. Therefore, information about the current affiliation of a speaker at the moment of the event and about the current title that a person has when the event takes place is encoded directly inside of the individual event.

```
<listPerson>
  <person role="speaker"
    corresp="#cap_clemens">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
    </name>
  </person>
</listPerson>
```

```

<affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
<person role="speaker"
  corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang">
  <name>
    <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
  </name>
  <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
</listPerson>

```

The titles of the speaker(s) are recorded according to the information provided in the lecture program, supporting materials (slides, videos, or blog posts), or a short biography. Common academic titles include:

- Dr. / Dr.-Ing. / PhD
- PD (Priv.-Doz.)
- Asst. Prof. / Assoc. Prof. / Jun.-Prof. / Prof. (Univ.-Prof.)

These titles are standardized. For instance, "Univ.-Prof." is simplified to "Prof.", and variations in spelling (e.g., "PhD" and "Ph.D.") are standardized.

Academic degrees such as *Bakkalaureus Artium* / *Bachelor of Arts* (B.A.) and *Magister Artium* / *Master of Arts* (M.A.) are not recorded, as they are typically not included in the program. Similarly, if no title is available, the value not found is used:

```

<listPerson>
  <person role="speaker"
    corresp="#theise_antje">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">not found</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#ub-rostock"/>
  </person>
</listPerson>

```

3.2.5. Hosts and Organizers

Hosts are recorded at the end of the individual lecture entry to indicate which organizations were responsible for hosting the lecture, i.e., those that invited the speaker(s). The host institution is specified with an `<org>` element that includes the attribute *role* with the standardized value host-institution. The *corresp* attribute references the corresponding organization entry in the TEI header. This value is recorded independently of the lecture modality (i.e., in presence, hybrid, or online).

```

<org role="host-institution"
  corresp="#uni-rostock"/>

```

As mentioned above, information about the hosting institutions concludes the section for an individual lecture. However, the final element within a lecture series term is the information about the organizers of the term. This information is stored within an `<org>` element with the attribute *role* and the standardized value organizer.

```

<org role="organizer"
  corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"/>

```

Unlike host institutions, which are organizations, organizers are recorded as individual persons, as can be seen in the example above. It is possible for an organizer to also be a speaker in another lecture series or even in their own series.

Since organizational responsibility can change from term to term, it is considered appropriate to record this information at this level rather than for the entire series.

3.3. Creating IDs

The dataset assigns unique IDs to lecture series, lecture series terms, individual lectures, persons, organizations, and locations, which are consistently stored in the *xml:id* attribute. The following aspects must be considered when creating IDs:

- Lowercase only: All IDs are written exclusively in lowercase.
- No numbers: Numbers are not used in IDs.
- Latin script only: The Latin script is consistently applied.
- No diacritical marks: Diacritical marks (e.g., ä, ö, ü, â, ê, î) are completely removed or replaced with corresponding transliterations (e.g., ä # ae, ö # oe, è # e).

Additional considerations include:

- Standardized prefixes: Certain IDs, such as those for universities, always begin with a fixed prefix (e.g., uni- for universities, fh- for universities of applied sciences).
- – Underscores (_) are used exclusively for person IDs, separating the surname from the given name.

- Hyphens (-) are used for organizations and locations to separate individual name components (e.g., multi-word city names). In person IDs, hyphens are used to connect multiple given names or multiple surnames.

3.4. Capturing Language

All collected information is recorded exclusively in the languages in which it appears on the respective websites. Each element of a lecture event that contains textual information in a certain language is marked with the attribute *xml:lang*, specifying the corresponding language value, such as en for English or de for German. No translations of content are produced.

The documentation of series, terms and lectures is mainly focused on English, Italian, German, Spanish, French and Portuguese, due to the language knowledge of the collaborators in this project. Other languages can be included, especially when it comes to recording the names of organizations or places. By default, these informations are documented in the language in which they originally emerged, which may differ from the respective national language.

In some cases, a title may include multiple languages, whether for stylistic reasons or because it contains a key term discussed in the lecture or an introductory quotation. In such instances, only the primary language of the title is recorded, while additional languages are not documented, as shown in the following example:

```
<eventName xml:lang="en">Le chemin de l'image in Renaissance Lyon: digital tools for the
study of early modern illustrations</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">
<p>The talk will focus on the study of digital collections of early modern printed
books and on the implementation of the Imagematching software in cooperation with
the Visual Geometry Group of Department of Engineering Science at University of
Oxford. In the research project The Early Modern Illustrated Book in Lyon (Equipex
Bibliissima/Ca' Foscari), the art historian Barbara Tramelli developed a new
methodology for the study of book illustrations, using and implementing for her
research Renaissance images two digital tools: [...]</p>
</note>
```

In such cases, the primary language of the element must be identified and recorded. In the example above, this would be English. The primary language can often be determined by identifying which part of the content conveys the core subject matter rather than serving a decorative or stylistic function. For titles, another useful indicator is the language of the accompanying abstract, if available.

3.5. Capturing Links

In order to ensure the long-term accessibility and reliability of information, we secure all relevant sources via links, which are then archived using the Wayback Machine from the Internet Archive (<https://web.archive.org/>). This archiving process applies to all links, except for DOI links, which are permanent by definition and do not require additional archiving. However, links that lead to videos, such as those on YouTube, are not archived because archiving by the Wayback Machine is not possible in this case.

All links within the dataset are encoded using the *<ptr>* (pointer) element. Within this element, the *type* attribute is used to specify the exact role of the link, as seen in the following examples:

```
<ptr type="programme"
target="https://web.archive.org/web/20230609113732/https://www.unive.it/data/33113/2/38661"/>
<ptr type="slides"
target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7798685"/>
<ptr type="video"
target="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=itVMXEEKZFQ"/>
<ptr type="blogpost"
target="https://doi.org/10.58079/o57z"/>
```

The values for the *type* attribute are as follows:

- **programme:** Refers to a complete programme for a semester or event series, or to a dedicated page for a specific lecture.
- **slides:** Points to presentation slides, such as PDFs or PowerPoint files.
- **video:** Links to a video recording of the lecture, including the presentation and possibly the discussion. These links are not archived.
- **blogpost:** Directs to a blog post discussing the lecture, potentially featuring parts of the presentation, speaker information, or related images.

It is important to highlight that we only capture links that directly originate from the lecture series' website. While further research to gather additional sources is possible, it has not been consistently carried out.

3.6. Capturing Organizations

Organizations involved in Digital Humanities lecture series are divided into two main roles: the affiliation of the (invited) speaker and the hosting venue.

In most cases, organizations are listed at the level of entire universities, research institutions, or cultural institutions. Specific departments or institutes within these organizations, where speakers may be affiliated, are not captured in the data. E.g. if an affiliation to the Institute of German Studies at the University of Rostock is mentioned in a program, only the University of Rostock is encoded.

Each organization is represented by a separate entry within the `<particDesc>` element, found under `<listOrg>`. The `<org>` sub-element defines the organization and is assigned a unique ID through the `xml:id` attribute. This ID is used throughout the dataset to ensure consistent referencing. Additionally, the `type` attribute within the `<org>` element is employed to specify the organization's precise role. Available values for the `type` attribute include:

- `university`: for universities and universities of applied sciences
- `research_institution`: for private or public institutions that conduct research
- `company`: for companies or private sector organizations
- `glam`: for galleries, libraries, archives, museums; generally, all cultural and memory institutions
- `other`: we use this when none of the categories listed above apply, for example in the case of radio stations or newspapers.

As can be seen in the example below, the "Università di Bologna" is represented as an organization with the ID `uni-bologna`. The name of the organization is presented in the original language (Italian, in this case), and an external Wikidata identifier is included within the `<idno>` element.

```
<org xml:id="uni-bologna" type="university">
  <name xml:lang="it">Università di Bologna</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q131262</idno>
  <place corresp="#bologna"/>
</org>
```

3.6.1. Universities

As described above, all organizations, including all university entries, are assigned an ID. Unlike those of other organizations, university IDs always begin with `uni-` or `fh-` followed by a unique part, typically derived from the name or location of the institution. For example, the University of Rostock is captured as follows:

```
<org xml:id="uni-rostock" type="university">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Rostock</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q159895</idno>
  <place corresp="#rostock"/>
</org>
```

In order to maintain clarity and allow for future adjustments, the names of universities are standardized. For instance, "Julius-Maximilians-Universität Würzburg" is shortened to "Universität Würzburg", and the corresponding ID becomes `uni-wuerzburg`:

```
<org xml:id="uni-wuerzburg"
  type="university">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Würzburg</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q161976</idno>
  <place corresp="#wuerzburg"/>
</org>
```

This simplification also reduces the need for updates when a university undergoes rebranding or changes its name, such as in the case of the recent shift in Münster from "Westfälische Wilhelms-Universität Münster" to "Universität Münster".

When multiple universities exist within the same city, additional distinctions are added to the ID to avoid confusion. These distinctions are appended to the base ID formed by the university's type and location. For example, in London, where several institutions exist, their IDs are distinguished as follows:

```
<org xml:id="uni-london-city"
  type="university">
  <name xml:lang="en">City, University of London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q1094046</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org xml:id="uni-london-ucl"
  type="university">
  <name xml:lang="en">University College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q193196</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org xml:id="uni-london-kcl"
  type="university">
  <name xml:lang="en">King's College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q245247</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
```

In contrast, Berlin presents another situation, as the German naming convention is that distinctions should precede the city name, resulting in IDs such as:

```
<org xml:id="uni-fu-berlin"
```

```

type="university">
  <name xml:lang="de">Freie Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q153006</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org xml:id="uni-hu-berlin"
type="university">
  <name xml:lang="de">Humboldt-Universität zu Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q152087</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org xml:id="uni-tu-berlin"
type="university">
  <name xml:lang="de">Technische Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q51985</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>

```

As with all organizations in the dataset, each university is assigned an external identifier, referenced through the `<idno>` element, which refers to the university's Wikidata entry.

3.6.2. Research Institutions

Research institutions are identified using the *type* attribute with the value `research_institution`. This category includes private and public research organizations that are not classified as universities.

```

<org xml:id="research-mpi"
type="research_institution">
  <name xml:lang="de">Max-Planck-Institut für Wissenschaftsgeschichte</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q685399</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>

```

The structure follows the same pattern as universities, ensuring consistency across all organization types.

3.6.3. GLAM Institutions

GLAM organizations (Galleries, Libraries, Archives, and Museums) are identified using the *type* attribute with the value `glam`. The IDs for GLAM organizations are usually derived from existing abbreviations.

```

<org xml:id="museum-snm" type="glam">
  <name xml:lang="de">Schweizerisches Nationalmuseum (SNM)</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q2256718</idno>
  <place corresp="#zuerich"/>
</org>

```

To facilitate clear differentiation, prefixes such as `museum-`, `library-`, `gallery-`, and `archive-` are used in IDs when applicable. If an institution does not fit these categories, an existing abbreviation serves as the identifier:

```

<org xml:id="spk" type="glam">
  <name xml:lang="de">Stiftung Preußischer Kulturbesitz (SPK)</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q685171</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>

```

3.6.4. Companies

The company category includes both private and public organizations that are not primarily engaged in academic research. This encompasses commercial enterprises as well as organizations funded through grants or sponsorships, such as those providing infrastructure or research support.

Organizations in this category are identified using the *type* attribute with the value `company`. Similar to research institutions and GLAMs, company IDs are derived from their names and, where applicable, existing abbreviations.

```

<org xml:id="wordpress" type="company">
  <name xml:lang="en">WordPress Foundation</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q56787199</idno>
  <place corresp="#san-francisco"/>
</org>
<org xml:id="pagina" type="company">
  <name xml:lang="de">pagina Publikationstechnologien</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q131538003</idno>
  <place corresp="#weil-der-stadt"/>
</org>

```

3.7. Capturing Persons

Each speaker included in the dataset is represented by an individual entry within the `<listPerson>` element, specifically under `<particDesc>`.

To ensure consistent identification, every speaker is assigned a unique ID through the *xml:id* attribute. This identifier follows a standardized format, combining the speaker's surname and given name, separated by an underscore. In cases where a speaker has multiple given or family names, these are connected using hyphens. For example:

```

<person xml:id="maget-dominice_antoinette">
  <name>
    <forename>Antoinette</forename>
    <surname>Maget Dominicé</surname>
  </name>
  <gender>female</gender>
  <idno type="orcid">https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9056-4544</idno>
</person>

```

```
<idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q102211240</idno>
</person>
```

As shown above, each entry also records the speaker's social gender, represented by the `<gender>` element within the `<person>` element. The primary values for this element are female and male. The gender assignment is based primarily on the typical gender associations of given names. Additionally, where available, information from Wikidata and other external databases has been used to verify gender identity. If research indicates that a person does not fall within the binary gender spectrum, they are assigned the value non-binary. It should be noted that assigning gender based on name connotations is inherently prone to errors. While every effort has been made to ensure accuracy through external sources, there may still be instances where the assigned gender does not align with the individual's self-identification.

Each speaker entry includes a `<name>` element, which further contains `<forename>` and `<surname>` sub-elements. These store the full given name and surname of the individual without abbreviations or alterations.

Additionally, every speaker entry includes at least one, but typically two, `<idno>` elements. These elements reference external identifiers. One of these identifiers is the orcid, a researcher-specific identifier maintained by the speaker themselves, while the second is a wikidata ID. If a Wikidata entry does not already exist for a given speaker, a new record is created.

3.8. Capturing Locations

Each location in the dataset is represented by an individual entry within the `<listPlace>` element, specifically under `<settingDesc>`. There are three types of entries: for continents, for countries and for cities. This distinction is made using the `type` attribute, which takes either the value continent, country or city.

All location names are recorded in English or using the vernacular form if no English form is known, following the naming conventions in place at the time of data collection.

To ensure consistent identification, each location is assigned a unique ID using the `xml:id` attribute. In most cases, this ID matches the name of the city, country or continent. However, exceptions are made when a city shares the same name as the country it belongs to, such as Luxembourg City in Luxembourg. The same rule applies to city-states:

```
<place type="country" xml:id="singapore">
  <name>Singapore</name>
</place>
<place type="city" xml:id="singapore-city">
  <country corresp="#singapore"/>
  <name>Singapore</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7001488</idno>
</place>
```

Each city entry includes a `<name>` element that records the full name of the place without abbreviations or modifications. Additionally, every city entry contains a `<country>` element, which links the city to its corresponding country via the `ref` attribute.

Each city entry also includes an `<idno>` element. Using the `type` attribute, this element provides a reference to the Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names (TGN), ensuring precise identification of the location.

```
<place type="city" xml:id="rostock">
  <country corresp="#germany"/>
  <name>Rostock</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7100449</idno>
</place>
```

For place names consisting of multiple words, hyphens are used to connect the words in the `xml:id` attribute:

```
<place type="city" xml:id="le-mans">
  <country ref="#france"/>
  <name>Le Mans</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7008494</idno>
</place>
```

Appendix A. TEI Specifications

Appendix A.1. Elements

Appendix A.1.1. <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the <code>model.resource</code> class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
version	<p>specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.version</u></p> <p>Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise associ-</p>

	ation provided by the <i>source</i> attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>.
Contained by	textstructure: <u>TEI</u>
May contain	header: <u>teiHeader</u> textstructure: <u>TEI</u> <u>text</u>
Note	As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see 5.7.2. Namespaces). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 as the value of the XML namespace declaration (xmlns), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <TEI version="4.8.1" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.
Example	<pre> <TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a namespace.</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No source: this is an original work.</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </teiHeader> <text> <body> <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p> </body> </text> </TEI> </pre>
Example	<pre> <TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No source: this is an original work.</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </teiHeader> <facsimile> <graphic url="page1.png"/> <graphic url="page2.png"/> <graphic url="page3.png"/> <graphic url="page4.png"/> </facsimile> </TEI> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="teiHeader"/> <alternate> <sequence> <classRef key="model.resource" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element TEI { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, attribute version { text }?, (tei_teiHeader, ((tei_model.resource+, tei_TEI*) tei_TEI+)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.2. <affiliation>

<affiliation> (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [16.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef – att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – type – @subtype <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Derived from <u>att.typed</u></p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Sample values include: sponsor recommend discredit pledge</p>
Member of	<u>model.addressLike</u> <u>model.persStateLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>person</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <u><name></u> element as above, or the more specific <u><orgName></u> element.

Example	<pre><affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name> </affiliation></pre>
Example	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.</p> <pre><affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName> </affiliation></pre>
Example	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.</p> <pre><affiliation from="1902-01-01" to="1906-01-01">Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.</affiliation></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element affiliation { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.datable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.3. <availability>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.global.source * @source • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default <p>status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Legal values free</p> <p>are: (free) the text is freely available.</p> <p>un-</p> <p>known(unknown) the status of the text is unknown.</p> <p>re-</p> <p>strict(restricted) the text is not freely available.</p> <p>ed</p>
Member of	<u>model.biblPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> header: <u>publicationStmt</u>
May contain	core: <u>p</u> header: <u>licence</u>
Note	A consistent format should be adopted
Example	<pre><availability status="restricted"> <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p> </availability> <availability status="free"> <p>In the public domain</p> </availability> <availability status="restricted"> <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p> </availability></pre>
Example	<pre><availability> <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"> <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p> <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p> <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p> <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.</p> </licence> </availability></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element availability { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, attribute status { "free" "unknown" "restricted" }?, (tei_model.availabilityPart tei_model.pLike)+</pre>

Appendix A.1.4. <bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default • att.docStatus <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @status • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype

Member of	<u>model.biblLike</u> <u>model.biblPart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl desc item note p title</u> header: <u>licence sourceDesc taxonomy</u> namesdates: <u>event org person place</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl date editor name note ptr pubPlace publisher respStmt term title</u> header: <u>availability idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname</u> character data
Note	Contains <i>phrase-level</i> elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class
Example	<pre><bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) </bibl></pre>
Example	<pre><bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberger</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl></pre>
Example	<pre><bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003"> <author> <name> <surname>Carlin</surname> (<forename>Claire</forename>) </name> </author>, <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last congrès</title> dans <bibl type="monogr"> <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W. Tobin</title>, éd. <editor> <name> <forename>Claire</forename> <surname>Carlin</surname> </name> </editor> et <editor> <name> <forename>Kathleen</forename> <surname>Wine</surname> </name> </editor>, <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>, <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>, <date when="2003">2003</date>. </bibl> </bibl></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.highlighted"/> <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/> <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/> <classRef key="model.segLike"/> <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element bibl { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, tei_att.docStatus.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (text tei_model.gLike) }</pre>

	<pre> tei_model.highlighted tei_model.pPart.data tei_model.pPart.edit tei_model.segLike tei_model.ptrLike tei_model.biblPart tei_model.global) * } </pre>
--	--

Appendix A.1.5. <bloc>

<bloc> (bloc) contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [14.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @datingMethod – att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef – att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.placeNamePart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre><bloc type="union">the European Union</bloc> <bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element bloc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.6. <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	textstructure

Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @xml:id @n @xml:lang @xml:base @xml:space att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @corresp @synch @sameAs @copyOf @next @prev @exclude @select att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @rend @style @rendition att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @cert @resp att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @source att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @decls
Contained by	textstructure: <u>text</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> namesdates: <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u>
Example	<pre> <body> <1>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</1> <1>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</1> <1>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</1> <1>eci dryctin or astelidæ</1> <1>he aerist scop aelda barnum</1> <1>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</1> <1>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</1> <1>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</1> <1>firum foldu frea allmectig</1> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer> </body> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> </pre>

	<pre> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> <alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.divLike"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.div1Like"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/> <classRef key="model.common"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <alternate minOccurs="0"> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.divLike"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.div1Like"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.divBottom"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element body { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, (tei_model.global*, ((tei_model.divTop, (tei_model.global tei_model.divTop) *) ?), ((tei_model.divGenLike, (tei_model.global tei_model.divGenLike) *) ?), (((tei_model.divLike, (tei_model.global tei_model.divGenLike) *) +) ((tei_model.div1Like, (tei_model.global tei_model.divGenLike) *) +)) (((schemaSpec tei_model.common), tei_model.global*) +), ((</pre>

	<pre> (tei_model.divLike, (tei_model.global tei_model.divGenLike) *) + ((tei_model.divLike, (tei_model.global tei_model.divGenLike) *) +)) ?), ((tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global*) *)) } </pre>
--	--

Appendix A.1.7. <catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref
Contained by	header: <u>category</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u>

	names dates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre><catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><catDesc> <textDesc n="novel"> <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel> <constitution type="single"/> <derivation type="original"/> <domain type="art"/> <factuality type="fiction"/> <interaction type="none"/> <preparedness type="prepared"/> <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/> <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/> </textDesc> </catDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element catDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, (text tei_model.limitedPhrase tei_model.catDescPart) * }</pre>

Appendix A.1.8. <category>

<category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @resp – att.global.source * @source • att.datcat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @datcat – @valueDatcat – @targetDatcat
Contained by	header: <u>category taxonomy</u>
May contain	core: desc header: <u>catDesc category</u>
Example	<pre><category xml:id="b1"> <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc> </category></pre>
Example	<pre><category xml:id="b2"> <catDesc>Prose </catDesc> <category xml:id="b1"> <catDesc>journalism</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="b12"> <catDesc>fiction</catDesc> </category> </category></pre>
Example	<pre><category xml:id="LIT"> <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura pi#kna</catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc> <category xml:id="LPROSE"> <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="LPOETRY"> <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="LDRAMA"> <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc> </category> </category></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <alternate> <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.descLike"/> <elementRef key="equiv"/> <elementRef key="gloss"/> </alternate> </alternate> <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element category { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.datcat.attributes, ((tei_catDesc+ (tei_model.descLike equiv gloss) *), tei_category*) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.9. <classDecl>

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Member of	<u>model.encodingDescPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>encodingDesc</u>
May contain	header: <u>taxonomy</u>
Example	<pre> <classDecl> <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH"> <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl> </taxonomy> </classDecl> <!-- ... --> <textClass> <keywords scheme="#LCSH"> <term>Political science</term> <term>United States — Politics and government — Revolution, 1775-1783</term> </keywords> </textClass> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element classDecl { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_taxonomy+ } </pre>

Appendix A.1.10. <country>

<country> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [14.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:base
- @xml:space
- att.global.linking
 - * @corresp
 - * @synch
 - * @sameAs
 - * @copyOf
 - * @next
 - * @prev
 - * @exclude
 - * @select
- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
 - @period
 - att.dataable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.dataable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.dataable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef – att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.placeNamePart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
Example	<pre><country key="DK">Denmark</country></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element country { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.11. <date>

<date> (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 16.2.3. The Setting Description 14.4. Dates]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp

- * @synch
- * @sameAs
- * @copyOf
- * @next
- * @prev
- * @exclude
- * @select
- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.calendarSystem
 - @calendar
- att.canonical
 - @key
 - @ref
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.datable
 - @period
 - att.datable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.datable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.datable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore
 - * @notAfter

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @from * @to • att.dimensions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @unit – @quantity – @extent – @precision – @scope – att.ranging <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @atLeast * @atMost * @min * @max * @confidence • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.dateLike</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<code><date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date></code>
Example	Given on the <code><date when="1977-06-12"></code> Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth. <code></date></code>
Example	<code><date when="1990-09">September 1990</date></code>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element date { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.calendarSystem.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.datable.attributes, tei_att.dimensions.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, </pre>

	(text tei_model.gLike tei_model.phrase tei_model.global)*
--	---

Appendix A.1.12. <desc>

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [23.4.1. Description of Components]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @xml:id @n @xml:lang @xml:base @xml:space att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @corresp @synch @sameAs @copyOf @next @prev @exclude @select att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @rend @style @rendition att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @cert @resp att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @source att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @generatedBy att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> type @subtype <div> <div>type</div> <div> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology. Derived from att.typed Status Optional Datatype teidata.enumerated Suggested values include: dep-re- (deprecation information) This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding. ca- fo </div> </div>

	<pre> <dataSpec module="tei" ident="teidata.point" validUntil="2050-02-25"> <desc type="deprecationInfo" versionDate="2018-09-14" xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA, strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either <q>3</q> or <q>3.0</q>.</desc> <!-- ... --> </dataSpec> </pre>
Member of	model.descLike model.labelLike
Contained by	core: desc item list note p title header: category licence taxonomy namesdates: event listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace org place textstructure: body
May contain	core: bibl date desc list name ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Note	When used in a specification element such as <code><elementSpec></code> , TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.
Example	<p>Example of a <code><desc></code> element inside a documentation element.</p> <pre> <dataSpec module="tei" ident="teidata.point"> <desc versionDate="2010-10-17" xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.</desc> <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(- ? [0-9] + (\. [0-9] +) ? , - ? [0-9] + (\. [0-9] +) ?)" /> </content> <!-- ... --> </dataSpec> </pre>
Example	<p>Example of a <code><desc></code> element in a non-documentation element.</p> <pre> <place xml:id="KERG2"> <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName> <!-- ... --> <terrain> <desc>antarctic tundra</desc> </terrain> <!-- ... --> </place> </pre>
Schematron	<p>A <code><desc></code> with a <i>type</i> of <code>deprecationInfo</code> should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <code><desc></code> is a valid child of that element.</p> <pre> <sch:rule context="tei:desc[@type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element desc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?, tei_macro.limitedContent } </pre>

Appendix A.1.13. `<editor>`

`<editor>` contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.dateable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef – att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref
Member of	<u>model.respLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> header: <u>titleStmt</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
Example	<pre><editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor> <editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor> <editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element editor { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.14. <encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Member of	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>teiHeader</u>
May contain	core: p header: <u>classDecl</u>
Example	<pre><encodingDesc> <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p> </encodingDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element encodingDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, (tei_model.encodingDescPart tei_model.pLike)+ }</pre>

Appendix A.1.15. <event>

<event> (event) contains data relating to anything of significance that happens in time. [14.3.1. Basic Principles]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev

- * @exclude
 - * @select
- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.dateable
 - @period
 - att.dateable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.dateable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.dateable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore
 - * @notAfter
 - * @from
 - * @to
- att.editLike
 - @evidence
 - @instant
- att.locatable
 - @where
- att.naming
 - @role
 - @nymRef
 - att.canonical
 - * @key

	<p>* @ref</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @sortKey att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @type @subtype
Member of	model.eventLike
Contained by	namesdates: event listEvent org person place
May contain	<p>core: bibl desc note p ptr</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>namesdates: event eventName listEvent listPerson listPlace org person place</p>
Example	<pre> <listEvent> <event when="1618-05-23" xml:id="SecondDefPrague" where="#Prague"> <eventName>1618 Defenestration of Prague</eventName> <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q13365740</idno> <listPerson type="defenstrated"> <person> <persName>Jaroslav Bořita z Martinic</persName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/116810998</idno> </person> <person> <persName>Vilém Slavata z Chlumu a Košumberka</persName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/1018376615</idno> </person> <person> <persName>Filip Fabricius</persName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/133946118</idno> </person> </listPerson> <place xml:id="Prague"> <placeName>Prague</placeName> </place> </event> <event from="1618" to="1648" xml:id="ThirtyYearsWar"> <eventName>Thirty Years' War</eventName> <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q2487</idno> <event when="1643-03-19" xml:id="BattleofRocroi" where="#Rocroi"> <eventName>Battle of Rocroi</eventName> <idno type="Wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q728480</idno> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/4202901-6</idno> <place xml:id="Rocroi"> <placeName>Rocroi</placeName> <location> <geo decls="#WGS">49.926111 4.522222</geo> </location> </place> </event> </event> </listEvent> </pre>
Example	<pre> <person> <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12"> <label>matriculation</label> </event> <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23"> <label>graduation</label> </event> </person> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <classRef key="model.labelLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="eventName" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> </pre>

	<pre> <classRef key="model.noteLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <elementRef key="linkGrp"/> <elementRef key="link"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> <elementRef key="ptr"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.eventLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.personLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listPerson" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.placeLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listPlace" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.objectLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element event { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.locatable.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_idno*, tei_model.headLike*, (tei_model.pLike+ tei_model.labelLike+ tei_eventName+), (tei_model.noteLike tei_model.biblLike linkGrp link tei_idno tei_ptr)*, tei_model.eventLike*, (tei_model.personLike tei_listPerson)*, (tei_model.placeLike tei_listPlace)*, tei_model.objectLike*, (relation listRelation)*) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.16. <eventName>

<eventName> (name of an event) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an event. [14.2.4. Event Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch

- * @sameAs
- * @copyOf
- * @next
- * @prev
- * @exclude
- * @select
- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.dataable
 - @period
 - att.dataable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.dataable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.dataable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore
 - * @notAfter
 - * @from
 - * @to
- att.editLike
 - @evidence
 - @instant
- att.personal
 - @full
 - @sort

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @role * @nymRef * att.canonical + @key + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - @type - @subtype
Member of	<u>model.nameLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre> <listEvent> <event from="1939-09-01" to="1945-09-02"> <eventName xml:lang="de">Zweiter Weltkrieg</eventName> <eventName xml:lang="en">World War II</eventName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/4079167-1</idno> <idno type="Wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q362</idno> </event> <event from="1939-09-01" to="1939-10-06" xml:id="UeberfallAufPolen"> <eventName xml:lang="de">Überfall auf Polen</eventName> <eventName xml:lang="en">Invasion of Poland</eventName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/4175002-0</idno> <idno type="LOC">https://id.loc.gov/authorities/sh85148341</idno> <listPlace type="affected"> <place> <placeName xml:lang="pl">Gdańsk</placeName> <location> <geo>54.350556 18.652778</geo> </location> </place> </listPlace> </event> <event from="1941-06-22" to="1945-05-09"> <eventName xml:lang="de">Deutsch-Sowjetischer Krieg</eventName> <eventName xml:lang="ru">##### </eventName> <idno type="GND">https://d-nb.info/gnd/4076906-9</idno> <idno type="Wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q189266</idno> </event> </listEvent> </pre>
Example	<pre> <p>On <date when="1719-03-19">Monday</date>, <rs type="person">she</rs> was writing about the <eventName ref="#SecondDefPrague">1618 Defenestration of Prague</eventName> which initiated the <rs type="event" ref="#ThirtyYearsWar">long war</rs>.</p> </pre>
Example	<pre> <event from="2019-09-16" to="2019-09-20" xml:id="tei2019graz"> <eventName type="full">TEI 2019: What is text, really? TEI and beyond</eventName> <eventName type="short">TEI 2019</eventName> <note> The abstract leading to the <gi>eventName</gi> element is available at <ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019">https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019</ref>. </note> <listPerson type="LocalOrganizers"> <person> <persName> <surname>Raunig</surname> <forename>Elisabeth</forename> </persName> </person> <person> <persName> <surname>Scholger</surname> <forename>Martina</forename> </persName> </person> </listPerson> </pre>

	<pre> </person> <person> <persName> <surname>Scholger</surname> <forename>Walter</forename> </persName> </person> <person> <persName> <surname>Steiner</surname> <forename>Elisabeth</forename> </persName> </person> <person> <persName> <surname>Vogeler</surname> <forename>Georg</forename> </persName> </person> </listPerson> <place xml:lang="de"> <placeName>Universität Graz</placeName> <location> <address> <addrLine>ReSoWi Gebäude</addrLine> <addrLine>Universitätsstraße 15</addrLine> <postCode>8010</postCode> <settlement>Graz</settlement> <country>Österreich</country> </address> <geo>15.451651587656 47.078215112534</geo> </location> </place> <listRelation> <relation active="#tei2019graz" passive="#AnnualTEIConference" type="CRM" name="P31_is_instance_of" ref="https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Property:P31"/> </listRelation> </event> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element eventName { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.datable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

Appendix A.1.17. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Contained by	header: <u>teiHeader</u>
May contain	header: <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
Note	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
Example	<pre> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <sequence> <elementRef key="titleStmt"/> <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/> <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> <elementRef key="sourceDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element fileDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, ((tei_titleStmt, editionStmt?, extent?, tei_publicationStmt, seriesStmt*, notesStmt?), tei_sourceDesc+) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.18. <forename>

<forename> (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @full – @sort – att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @role * @nymRef * att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> + @key + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>

May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Example	<pre><persName> <roleName>Ex-President</roleName> <forename>George</forename> <surname>Bush</surname> </persName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element forename { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.19. <gender>

<gender> (gender) specifies the gender identity of a person, persona, or character. [14.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype <p>value supplies a coded value for gender identity.</p> <table> <tr> <td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr> <tr> <td>Datatype</td><td>1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.gender</u> separated by white-space</td></tr> <tr> <td>Note</td><td>Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</td></tr> </table>	Status	Optional	Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.gender</u> separated by white-space	Note	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.
Status	Optional						
Datatype	1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.gender</u> separated by white-space						
Note	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.						
Member of	<u>model.persStateLike</u>						
Contained by	namesdates: <u>person</u>						
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data						
Note	As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age and sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts varies. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety for purposes of interoperability or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail.						
Example	<code><gender value="W">woman</gender></code>						

Example	<code><gender value="NB">non-binary</gender></code>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element gender { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, attribute value { list { + } }?, tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

Appendix A.1.20. <idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [14.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – type – @subtype
type	<p>categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.</p> <p>Derived from att.typed</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <p>ISBN International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.</p> <p>ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.</p> <p>DOI Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.</p> <p>URI Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.</p> <p>VIAF</p>

	<p>A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.</p> <p>ESTC English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.</p> <p>OCLC OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.</p>
Member of	model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmntPart.detail
Contained by	<p>core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title</p> <p>header: catDesc idno licence publicationStmnt</p> <p>namesdates: affiliation bloc country event eventName forename gender nameLink org person place placeName roleName surname</p>
May contain	<p>header: idno</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for <i>type</i> on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
Example	<pre><idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno> <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno> <idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno> <idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno> <idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno> <idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno> <idno type="Wing">C695</idno> <idno type="oldCat"> <g ref="#sym"/>345 </idno></pre> <p>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.</p>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element idno { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.data.table.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { "ISBN" "ISSN" "DOI" "URI" "VIAF" "ESTC" "OCLC" }?, (text tei_model.gLike tei_idno) * }</pre>

Appendix A.1.21. [<item>](#)

<item> (item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @xml:id

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey
Contained by	core: <u>list</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>list-Place</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global <i>n</i> attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the <i>n</i> attribute on the <code><item></code> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <code><label></code> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <code><label></code> element, not <i>n</i> .
Example	<pre> <list rend="numbered"> <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head> <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item> <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item> <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item> <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item> <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item> <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item> <item> ...</item> </list> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element item { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, </pre>

Appendix A.1.22. <licence>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.dateable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @from-iso * @to-iso – att.dataable.w3c * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to • att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @targetLang – @target – @evaluate
Member of	<u>model.availabilityPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>availability</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>list-Place</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	A <u><licence></u> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The <i>target</i> attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The <i>when</i> , <i>notBefore</i> , <i>notAfter</i> , <i>from</i> or <i>to</i> attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
Example	<pre><licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence </licence></pre>
Example	<pre><availability> <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/" notBefore="2013-01-01"> <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p> <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p> </licence> </availability></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element licence { te_i_att.global.attributes, te_i_att.dataable.attributes, te_i_att.pointing.attributes, te_i_macro.specialPara }</pre>

Appendix A.1.23. <list>

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking

- * @corresp
- * @synch
- * @sameAs
- * @copyOf
- * @next
- * @prev
- * @exclude
- * @select
- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.sortable
 - @sortKey
- att.typed
 - type
 - @subtype

type

(type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from [att.typed](#)

Status Optional

Datatype [teidata.enumerated](#)

Suggested values include: **gloss**
(gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

in-
dex (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

in-
struc- (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany
(litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syl-
lo-
gism

	<p>(syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.</p> <p>Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of <i>type</i> on <code><list></code> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the <i>rend</i> or <i>style</i> attributes for these aspects of a list, while using <i>type</i> for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.</p> <p>The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <code><label></code> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <code><list type="gloss"></code>; this is however a semantic error.</p>
Member of	<code>model.listLike</code>
Contained by	<p>core: <code>desc item note p title</code></p> <p>header: <code>licence sourceDesc</code></p> <p>textstructure: <code>body</code></p>
May contain	core: <code>desc item note</code>
Note	May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.
Example	<pre><list rend="numbered"> <item>a butcher</item> <item>a baker</item> <item>a candlestick maker, with <list rend="bulleted"> <item>rings on his fingers</item> <item>bells on his toes</item> </list> </item> </list></pre>
Example	<pre><list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted"> <item>All Cretans are liars.</item> <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item> <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item> </list></pre>
Example	<pre><list type="litany" rend="simple"> <item>God save us from drought.</item> <item>God save us from pestilence.</item> <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item> <item>Praise be to God.</item> </list></pre>
Example	<p>The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):</p> <pre><div1 type="section"> <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head> <list rend="numbered"> <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence. <list rend="numbered"> <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account – or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item> <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item> <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item> <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, or to bring him back there.</item> <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item> </list> </item> <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting. <list rend="numbered"> <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.</item> <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item> </list></pre>

	<pre> </item> <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had refused him justice. <list rend="numbered"> <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item> <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item> </list> </item> <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item> </list> </div1> </pre> <p>Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.</p>
Example	<pre> <p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross. <list rend="simple"> <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item> <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item> <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item> </list> </p> </pre>
Schematron	<pre> <sch:rule context="tei:li[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> <alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="item"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <sequence> <elementRef key="headLabel" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="headItem" minOccurs="0"/> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="label"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="item"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </alternate> <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.divBottom"/> <classRef key="model.global" </pre>

	<pre> minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element list { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { "gloss" "index" "instructions" "litany" "syllogism" }?, ((tei_model.divTop tei_model.global tei_desc*)*, (((tei_item, tei_model.global*)+) (headLabel?, headItem?, ((label, tei_model.global*, tei_item, tei_model.global*)+))), ((tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global*)*)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.24. <listEvent>

<listEvent> (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event.
[14.3.1. Basic Principles]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.eventLike</u> <u>model.listLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>desc</u> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>licence</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> namesdates: <u>event</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
May contain	core: <u>desc</u> namesdates: <u>event</u> <u>listEvent</u>
Example	<pre> <listEvent> <head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head> <event xml:id="event01" when="1861-09-19"> <label>Barbourville</label> <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion, which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc> </event> <event xml:id="event02" when="1861-10-21"> <label>Camp Wild Cat</label> <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc> </event> <event xml:id="event03" from="1864-06-11" to="1864-06-12"> <label>Cynthiana</label> <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864, in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc> </event> </listEvent> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.eventLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </sequence> </pre>

	<pre> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listEvent { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_model.headLike*, tei_desc*, (relation listRelation)*, ((tei_model.eventLike+, (relation listRelation)*)+)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.25. <listOrg>

<listOrg> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [14.2.2. Organizational Names]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.listLike</u> <u>model.orgPart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>desc</u> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>title</u> corpus: <u>particDesc</u> header: <u>licence</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> namesdates: <u>listOrg</u> <u>org</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
May contain	core: <u>desc</u> namesdates: <u>listOrg</u> <u>org</u>
Note	The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.
Example	<pre> <listOrg> <head>Libyans</head> <org> <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName> <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of bronze [...]</desc> </org> <org> <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName> <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the palms [...]</desc> </org> <org> <orgName>Garamantians</orgName> <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc> <!-- ... --> </org> </listOrg> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="org" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listOrg" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listOrg { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_model.headLike*, </pre>

```

    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( ( tei_org | tei_listOrg )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+ )
  )
}

```

Appendix A.1.26. <listPerson>

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.listLike</u> <u>model.orgPart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>desc</u> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>title</u> corpus: <u>particDesc</u> header: <u>licence</u> <u>sourceDesc</u>

	namesdates: event listPerson org textstructure: body
May contain	core: desc namesdates: listPerson org person
Note	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.
Example	<pre> <listPerson type="respondents"> <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/> <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/> <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/> <listRelation> <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/> </listRelation> </listPerson> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.personLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listPerson" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listPerson { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_model.headLike*, tei_desc*, (relation listRelation)*, (((tei_model.personLike tei_listPerson)+, (relation listRelation)*)+)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.27. <listPlace>

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 14.3.4. Places]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.listLike</u> <u>model.orgPart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>desc</u> <u>item</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>title</u> corpus: <u>settingDesc</u> header: <u>licence</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> namesdates: <u>event</u> <u>listPlace</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
May contain	core: <u>desc</u> namesdates: <u>listPlace</u> <u>place</u>
Example	<pre><listPlace type="offshoreIslands"> <place> <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName> </place> <place> <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName> </place> </listPlace></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/></pre>

	<pre> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.placeLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listPlace" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listPlace { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_model.headLike*, tei_desc*, (relation listRelation)*, (((tei_model.placeLike tei_listPlace)+, (relation listRelation)*)+)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.28. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition

- * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
 - @period
 - att.dataable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.dataable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.dataable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore
 - * @notAfter
 - * @from
 - * @to
- att.editLike
 - @evidence
 - @instant
- att.personal
 - @full
 - @sort
 - att.naming
 - * @role
 - * @nymRef
 - * att.canonical
 - + @key

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.nameLike.agent model.personPart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp respStmt term title</u> header: <u>catDesc licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org person place placeName roleName surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date name note ptr term title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname</u> character data
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.
Example	<pre><name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name> <name type="place">Villingaholt</name> <name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name> <name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element name { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.datable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.29. <nameLink>

<nameLink> (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as <i>van der</i> or <i>of</i> . [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	model.persNamePart
Contained by	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org placeName roleName surname
May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Example	<pre><persName> <forename>Frederick</forename> <nameLink>van der</nameLink> <surname>Tronck</surname> </persName></pre>
Example	<pre><persName> <forename>Alfred</forename> <nameLink>de</nameLink> <surname>Muset</surname> </persName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element nameLink { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.30. <note>

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.anchoring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @anchored – @targetEnd • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.placement <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @place • att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @targetLang – @target – @evaluate • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype • att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @hand
Member of	<u>model.noteLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> textstructure: <u>body</u> <u>text</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u>

	namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename listEvent listOrg listPerson list-Place nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Example	<p>In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":</p> <pre> And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. </note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance. <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <respStmt xml:id="MDMH"> <resp>translation from German to English</resp> <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name> </respStmt> </pre> <p>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.</p>
Example	<p>The global <i>n</i> attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:</p> <pre> Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. </pre> <p>However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.</p>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element note { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.anchoring.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.placement.attributes, tei_att.pointing.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_att.written.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara } </pre>

Appendix A.1.31. <org>

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [14.3.3. Organizational Data]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype <p>role specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.enumerated</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <code><desc></code> for each <code><valItem></code> element in the schema specification of the project's customization.</p>
Member of	<code>model.personLike</code>
Contained by	corpus: <code>particDesc</code> namesdates: <code>event listOrg listPerson org</code>
May contain	core: <code>bibl desc name note p ptr</code> header: <code>idno</code> namesdates: <code>bloc country event eventName forename listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink org person place placeName roleName surname</code>
Example	<pre> <org xml:id="JAMs"> <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName> <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the <name>Leif Ericson</name> </desc> <bibl> <author>Robert Shea</author> <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author> </pre>

	<pre> <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title> </bibl> </org> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.labelLike"/> <classRef key="model.nameLike"/> <classRef key="model.placeLike"/> <classRef key="model.orgPart"/> <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/> </alternate> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.noteLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <elementRef key="linkGrp"/> <elementRef key="link"/> <elementRef key="ptr"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.personLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element org { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, attribute role { list { + } }?, (tei_model.headLike*, (tei_model.pLike* (tei_model.labelLike tei_model.nameLike tei_model.placeLike tei_model.orgPart tei_model.milestoneLike)*), (tei_model.noteLike tei_model.biblLike linkGrp link tei_ptr)*, tei_model.personLike*) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.32. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @decls • att.fragmentable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @part • att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @hand
Member of	<u>model.pLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>item</u> <u>note</u> corpus: <u>particDesc</u> <u>settingDesc</u> header: <u>availability</u> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> namesdates: <u>event</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>list</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>list-Place</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre> <p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you done?</q> </p> <p> <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf. </p> <p> <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said. </p> <p> <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q> </p> </pre>
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:p"> <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText parent::tei:exemplum parent::tei:item parent::tei:note parent::tei:q parent::tei:quote parent::tei:remarks parent::tei:said parent::tei:sp parent::tei:stage parent::tei:cell parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:l/tei:p"> <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText parent::tei:figure parent::tei:note"> Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Content model	<pre> <content> </pre>

	<pre><macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element p { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, tei_att.fragmentable.attributes, tei_att.written.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }</pre>

Appendix A.1.33. <particDesc>

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information]	
Module	corpus
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	header: profileDesc
May contain	core: p namesdates: listOrg listPerson org person
Note	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.
Example	<pre><particDesc> <listPerson></pre>

	<pre> <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid"> <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p> </person> <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1"> <persName> <surname>Hancock</surname> <forename>Antony</forename> <forename>Aloysius</forename> <forename>St John</forename> </persName> <residence notAfter="1959"> <address> <street>Railway Cuttings</street> <settlement>East Cheam</settlement> </address> </residence> <occupation>comedian</occupation> </person> <listRelation> <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/> </listRelation> </listPerson> </particDesc> </pre> <p>This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.</p>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.personLike"/> <elementRef key="listPerson"/> <elementRef key="listOrg"/> </alternate> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element particDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, (tei_model.pLike+ (tei_model.personLike tei_listPerson tei_listOrg)+) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.34. <person>

<p><person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2.2. The Participant Description]</p>	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey
role	<p>specifies a primary role or classification for the person.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.</p>
sex	<p>specifies the sex of the person.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.sex</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>
gender	<p>specifies the gender of the person.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.gender</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>
age	<p>specifies an age group for the person.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.</p>
Member of	<u>model.personLike</u>
Contained by	corpus: <u>particDesc</u> namesdates: <u>event listPerson org</u>

May contain	core: bibl name note p ptr header: idno namesdates: affiliation event gender listEvent
Note	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the <code>model.personPart</code> class.
Example	<pre><person sex="F" age="adult"> <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French status B2.</p> </person></pre>
Example	<pre><person sex="intersex" role="god" age="immortal"> <persName>Hermaphroditos</persName> <persName xml:lang="grc">##µ#####</persName> </person></pre>
Example	<pre><person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="M" role="poet"> <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName> <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName> <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName> <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement> <country key="IT">Italy</country> </placeName> </birth> <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName> <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement> <country key="RO">Romania</country> </placeName> </death> </person></pre>
Example	<p>The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.</p> <pre><person xml:id="ariel" gender="U"> <persName>Ariel</persName> <note>Character in <title level="m">The Tempest</title>.</note> </person></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.personPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <elementRef key="ptr"/> </alternate> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element person { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, attribute role { list { + } }?, attribute sex { list { + } }?, attribute gender { list { + } }?, attribute age { text }?, (tei_model.pLike+ (tei_model.personPart tei_model.global tei_ptr) *) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.35. *<place>*

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location. [14.3.4. Places]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @xml:id @n @xml:lang @xml:base

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @evidence – @instant • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.placeLike</u>
Contained by	corpus: <u>settingDesc</u> namesdates: <u>event listPlace org place</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl desc name note p ptr</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>bloc country event listEvent listPlace place placeName</u>
Example	<pre> <place> <country>Lithuania</country> <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country> <place> <settlement>Vilnius</settlement> </place> <place> <settlement>Kaunas</settlement> </place> </place> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.labelLike"/> <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>

	<pre> <classRef key="model.eventLike"/> <elementRef key="name"/> </alternate> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.noteLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> <elementRef key="ptr"/> <elementRef key="linkGrp"/> <elementRef key="link"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.placeLike"/> <elementRef key="listPlace"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element place { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, (tei_model.headLike*, (tei_model.pLike* (tei_model.labelLike tei_model.placeStateLike tei_model.eventLike tei_name)*), (tei_model.noteLike tei_model.biblLike tei_idno tei_ptr linkGrp link)*, (tei_model.placeLike tei_listPlace)*) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.36. <placeName>

<placeName> (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [14.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select

- att.global.rendition
 - * @rend
 - * @style
 - * @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
 - * @cert
 - * @resp
- att.global.source
 - * @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.dataable
 - @period
 - att.dataable.custom
 - * @when-custom
 - * @notBefore-custom
 - * @notAfter-custom
 - * @from-custom
 - * @to-custom
 - * @datingPoint
 - * @datingMethod
 - att.dataable.iso
 - * @when-iso
 - * @notBefore-iso
 - * @notAfter-iso
 - * @from-iso
 - * @to-iso
 - att.dataable.w3c
 - * @when
 - * @notBefore
 - * @notAfter
 - * @from
 - * @to
- att.editLike
 - @evidence
 - @instant
- att.personal
 - @full
 - @sort
 - att.naming
 - * @role
 - * @nymRef
 - * att.canonical

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> + @key + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.placeNamePart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Example	<pre><placeName> <settlement>Rochester</settlement> <region>New York</region> </placeName></pre>
Example	<pre><placeName> <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName> <region>Argylshire</region> </placeName></pre>
Example	<pre><placeName> <measure>10 miles</measure> <offset>Northeast of</offset> <settlement>Attica</settlement> </placeName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element placeName { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.editLike.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.37. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Member of	<u>model.teiHeaderPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>teiHeader</u>
May contain	corpus: <u>particDesc</u> <u>settingDesc</u>
Note	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <u><profileDesc></u> unless these are documenting multiple texts.
Example	<pre> <profileDesc> <langUsage> <language ident="fr">French</language> </langUsage> <textDesc n="novel"> <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel> <constitution type="single"/> <derivation type="original"/> <domain type="art"/> <factuality type="fiction"/> <interaction type="none"/> <preparedness type="prepared"/> <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/> <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/> </textDesc> <settingDesc> <setting> <name>Paris, France</name> <time>Late 19th century</time> </setting> </settingDesc> </profileDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <classRef key="model.profileDescPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element profileDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* } </pre>

Appendix A.1.38. <ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. Links]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cReferencing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @cRef • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @decls • att.internetMedia <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @mimeType • att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @targetLang – @target – @evaluate • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.ptrLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> <u>publicationStmnt</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>person</u> <u>place</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	Empty element
Note	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
Example	<pre><ptr target="#p143 #p144"/> <ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/> <ptr cRef="1.3.4"/></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:ptr"> <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <empty/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element ptr { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cReferencing.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, tei_att.internetMedia.attributes, tei_att.pointing.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, empty }</pre>

Appendix A.1.39. <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef – att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref

Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	core: bibl header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date> </publicationStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element pubPlace { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.40. *<publicationStmt>*

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source

	* @source
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: date p ptr pubPlace publisher header: availability idno
Note	Where a publication statement contains several members of the <code>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</code> or <code>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</code> classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher> <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace> <date when="1846"/> </publicationStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher> <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace> <availability> <p>Available under licence only</p> </availability> <date when="1992">1992</date> </publicationStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Zea Books</publisher> <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace> <date>2017</date> <availability> <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</p> </availability> <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </publicationStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/> <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element publicationStmt { tei_att.global.attributes, (((tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency, tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail*)+) tei_model.pLike+) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.41. <publisher>

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @xml:id @n @xml:lang

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	core: bibl header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
Example	<pre><imprint> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher> <date>1987</date> </imprint></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element publisher { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.42. <resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref • att.datable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.datable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.datable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @notBefore-iso * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso <p>– att.dataable.w3c</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to
Contained by	core: <u>respStmt</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> character data
Note	The attribute <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name> </respStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element resp { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

Appendix A.1.43. <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref
Member of	<u>model.respLike</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> header: <u>titleStmt</u>
May contain	core: <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>resp</u>
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName> </respStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp> <name>Alan Morrison</name> </respStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <alternate> <sequence> <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <sequence> <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </alternate> <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element respStmt { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, (((tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.agent+) (tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei_resp+)), tei_note*) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.44. <roleName>

<roleName> (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @full – @sort – att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @role * @nymRef * att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> + @key + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>

Contained by	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org placeName roleName surname
May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Note	A roleName may be distinguished from an addName by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.
Example	<pre><persName> <forename>William</forename> <surname>Poulteny</surname> <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName> </persName></pre>
Example	<pre><p>The <roleName role="solicitor_general">S.G.</roleName> is the only national public official, including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be "learned in the law."</p></pre>
Example	<pre><p> <persName ref="#NJF"> <roleName role="solicitor_general">Solicitor General</roleName> Noel J. Francisco</persName>, representing the administration, asserted in rebuttal that there was nothing to disavow (...) <persName ref="#NJF">Francisco</persName> had violated the scrupulous standard of candor about the facts and the law that <roleName role="solicitor_general">S.G.s</roleName>, in Republican and Democratic administrations alike, have repeatedly said they must honor. </p></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element roleName { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.45. [<settingDesc>](#)

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]	
Module	corpus
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default
Member of	<u>model.profileDescPart</u>
Contained by	header: <u>profileDesc</u>
May contain	core: p namesdates: <u>listPlace</u> place
Note	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.
Example	<pre><settingDesc> <p>Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 </p> </settingDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="setting"/> <classRef key="model.placeLike"/> <elementRef key="listPlace"/> </alternate> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element settingDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, (tei_model.pLike+ (setting tei_model.placeLike tei_listPlace)+) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.46. <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as ‘born digital’ for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @default
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: bibl list p namesdates: listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace
Example	<pre><sourceDesc> <bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl> </sourceDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><sourceDesc> <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p> </sourceDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/> <classRef key="model.listLike"/> </alternate> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element sourceDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declarable.attributes, (tei_model.pLike+ (tei_model.biblLike tei_model.sourceDescPart tei_model.listLike)+) }</pre>

Appendix A.1.47. <surname>

<surname> (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @full – @sort – att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @role * @nymRef * att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> + @key + @ref • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	<u>model.persNamePart</u>
Contained by	core: <u>bibl</u> <u>date</u> <u>desc</u> <u>editor</u> <u>item</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>catDesc</u> <u>licence</u> namesdates: <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>org</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
May contain	core: <u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>ptr</u> <u>term</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u>

	namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Example	<pre><surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element surname { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.personal.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

Appendix A.1.48. <taxonomy>

<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]	
Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.datcat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @datcat – @valueDatcat – @targetDatcat

Contained by	header: <u>classDecl taxonomy</u>
May contain	core: <u>bibl desc</u> header: <u>category taxonomy</u>
Note	Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <u><taxonomy></u> element can be nested.
Example	<pre> <taxonomy xml:id="tax.b"> <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl> <category xml:id="tax.b.a"> <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc> <category xml:id="tax.b.a1"> <catDesc>Daily</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a2"> <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a3"> <catDesc>National</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a4"> <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a5"> <catDesc>Political</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a6"> <catDesc>Sports</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.d"> <catDesc>Religion</catDesc> <category xml:id="tax.b.d1"> <catDesc>Books</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.d2"> <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc> </category> </category> </taxonomy> </pre>
Example	<pre> <taxonomy> <category xml:id="literature"> <catDesc>Literature</catDesc> <category xml:id="poetry"> <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc> <category xml:id="sonnet"> <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc> <category xml:id="shakesSonnet"> <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="petraSonnet"> <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc> </category> </category> </category> <category xml:id="haiku"> <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="drama"> <catDesc>Drama</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="meter"> <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc> <category xml:id="feet"> <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc> <category xml:id="iambic"> <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="trochaic"> <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="feetNumber"> <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc> <category xml:id="pentameter"> <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tetrameter"> <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc> </category> </category> </category> </taxonomy> <!-- elsewhere in document --> <lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter"> <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l> <!-- ... --> </pre>

	</lg>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <alternate> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="category"/> <elementRef key="taxonomy"/> </alternate> </alternate> <sequence> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="equiv" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="gloss" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="category"/> <elementRef key="taxonomy"/> </alternate> </sequence> </alternate> <sequence> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="category"/> <elementRef key="taxonomy"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element taxonomy { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.datcat.attributes, (((tei_category tei_taxonomy)+ ((tei_model.descLike equiv gloss)+, (tei_category tei_taxonomy)*)) (tei_model.biblLike, (tei_category tei_taxonomy)*)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.49. <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module	header
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Contained by	textstructure: <u>TEI</u>
May contain	header: <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u>
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	<pre> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title> <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author> <respStmt> <resp>Originally prepared by</resp> <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name> </respStmt> <respStmt> <resp>Revised and edited by</resp> <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor> <address> <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine> </address> <idno type="OTA">119</idno> <availability> <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p> </availability> <date when="1968">1968</date> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> <encodingDesc> <projectDesc> <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p> </projectDesc> <editorialDecl> <correction> <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p> </correction> <normalization> <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p> </normalization> </editorialDecl> <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF"> <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='\$1']/div2[@n='\$2']/lb[@n='\$3'])"> <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list> <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi> </item> <item>a period</item> <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi> </item> <item>a space</item> <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi> </item> </p> </cRefPattern> </refsDecl> </encodingDesc> </pre>

	<pre> </list> </p> </cRefPattern> </refsDecl> </encodingDesc> <revisionDesc> <list> <item> <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item> <item> <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item> </list> </revisionDesc> </teiHeader> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="fileDesc"/> <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="revisionDesc" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element teiHeader { tei_att.global.attributes, (tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc?) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.50. <term>

<term> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]	
Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.cReferencing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @cRef • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @decls • att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @targetLang – @target – @evaluate • att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @sortKey • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink placeName roleName surname
May contain	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Note	<p>When this element appears within an <code><index></code> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <code><gloss></code> element by means of its <i>ref</i> attribute; alternatively a <code><gloss></code> element may point to a <code><term></code> element by means of its <i>target</i> attribute.</p> <p>In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <code><term></code> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <code><term></code> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.</p> <p>As with other members of the <code>att.canonical</code> class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the <i>ref</i> attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the <i>key</i> attribute). Because the mutually exclusive <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes overlap with the function of the <i>ref</i> attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.</p>
Example	A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <code><term>parser</term></code> , and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
Example	We may define <code><term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term></code> as <code><gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></code>
Example	We may define <code><term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term></code> as <code><gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></code>
Example	We discuss Leech's concept of <code><term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term></code> below.

Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element term { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.cReferencing.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, tei_att.pointing.attributes, tei_att.sortable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

Appendix A.1.51. <text>

<p><text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]</p>	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @decls • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @type – @subtype • att.written

	– @hand
Member of	<u>model.resource</u>
Contained by	textstructure: <u>TEI</u>
May contain	core: <u>note</u> textstructure: <u>body</u>
Note	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.
Example	<pre> <text> <front> <docTitle> <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart> </docTitle> </front> <body> <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l> <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body> </text> </pre>
Example	<p>The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:</p> <pre> <text> <front> <!-- front matter for the whole group --> </front> <group> <text> <!-- first text --> </text> <text> <!-- second text --> </text> </group> </text> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="front"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <alternate> <elementRef key="body"/> <elementRef key="group"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="back"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element text { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, tei_att.written.attributes, (tei_model.global*, ((front, tei_model.global*)?), (tei_body group), tei_model.global*, ((back, tei_model.global*)?)) } </pre>

Appendix A.1.52. <title>

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module	core
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @generatedBy • att.dataable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @period – att.dataable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-custom * @notBefore-custom * @notAfter-custom * @from-custom * @to-custom * @datingPoint * @datingMethod – att.dataable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when-iso * @notBefore-iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @notAfter-iso * @from-iso * @to-iso
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @when * @notBefore * @notAfter * @from * @to
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – type – @subtype
type	<p>classifies the title according to some convenient typology.</p> <p>Derived from <u>att.typed</u></p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Sample values include: main main title</p> <p>sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part</p> <p>alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known</p> <p>short abbreviated form of title</p> <p>desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title</p> <p>Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <u><title></u> element.</p>
level	<p>indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Legal values are: a (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.</p> <p>m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works</p> <p>j</p>

	<p>(journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper</p> <p>s</p> <p>(series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection</p> <p>u</p> <p>(unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)</p> <p>Note</p> <p>The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is <i>ipso facto</i> of level 'a', and one appearing within a <series> element of level 's'. For this reason, the <i>level</i> attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.</p>
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence titleStmnt namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink placeName roleName surname
May contain	core: bibl date desc list name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
Note	The attributes <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <code>att.canonical</code> may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
Example	<pre><title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989</title></pre>
Example	<pre><title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title></pre>
Example	<pre><title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element title { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, tei_att.cmc.attributes, tei_att.dataable.attributes, tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, attribute level { "a" "m" "j" "s" "u" }?, tei_macro.paraContent }</pre>

Appendix A.1.53. <titleStmnt>

<titleStmnt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header

Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @xml:id – @n – @xml:lang – @xml:base – @xml:space – att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @corresp * @synch * @sameAs * @copyOf * @next * @prev * @exclude * @select – att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @rend * @style * @rendition – att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @cert * @resp – att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @source
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: editor respStmt title
Example	<pre><titleStmt> <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title> <respStmt> <resp>compiled by</resp> <name>P.J. Lucas</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element titleStmt { tei_att.global.attributes, (tei_title+, tei_model.respLike*) }</pre>

Appendix A.2. Model classes

Appendix A.2.1. *model.addressLike*

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data

Members	affiliation
---------	-----------------------------

Appendix A.2.2. model.attributable

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.phraseSeq model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike

Appendix A.2.3. model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	availability
Members	licence

Appendix A.2.4. model.biblLike

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	event model.inter model.personPart org place sourceDesc taxonomy
Members	bibl

Appendix A.2.5. model.biblPart

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl
Members	model.imprintPart [pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [editor respStmt] availability bibl

Appendix A.2.6. model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	body
Members	model.cmc model.divPart [model.lLike model.pLike [p]] model.inter [model.attributable [model.quoteLike] model.biblLike [bibl] model.egLike model.labelLike [desc] model.listLike [list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl model.stageLike]
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

Appendix A.2.7. model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	date

Appendix A.2.8. model.descLike

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.	
Module	tei
Used by	category taxonomy

Members	desc
---------	----------------------

Appendix A.2.9. model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body list
Members	model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper

Appendix A.2.10. model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.specialPara model.common
Members	model.lLike model.pLike[p]
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

Appendix A.2.11. model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body list
Members	model.divTopPart [model.headLike] model.divWrapper

Appendix A.2.12. model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divTop
Members	model.headLike

Appendix A.2.13. model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	term title

Appendix A.2.14. model.encodingDescPart

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	encodingDesc
Members	classDecl

Appendix A.2.15. model.eventLike

model.eventLike groups elements which describe events.	
Module	tei
Used by	event listEvent model.orgPart model.personPart place
Members	event listEvent

Appendix A.2.16. model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
--	--

Module	tei
Used by	bibl body date list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart person text
Members	model.global.edit model.global.meta model.milestoneLike model.noteLike [note]

Appendix A.2.17. model.highlighted

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	model.emphLike [term title] model.hiLike

Appendix A.2.18. model.imprintPart

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.biblPart
Members	pubPlace publisher

Appendix A.2.19. model.inter

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart
Members	model.attributable [model.quoteLike] model.biblLike [bibl] model.egLike model.labelLike [desc] model.listLike [list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl model.stageLike

Appendix A.2.20. model.labelLike

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.	
Module	tei
Used by	event model.inter org place
Members	desc

Appendix A.2.21. model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	catDesc macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited
Members	model.emphLike [term title] model.hiLike model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [affiliation] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart [forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country placeName]] eventName idno] model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike [ptr]

Appendix A.2.22. model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.inter sourceDesc
Members	list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace

Appendix A.2.23. model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data org
Members	model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

Appendix A.2.24. model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike respStmt
Members	name
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

Appendix A.2.25. model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
Module	tei
Used by	event model.global org place
Members	note

Appendix A.2.26. model.orgPart

model.orgPart groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	org
Members	model.eventLike[event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace

Appendix A.2.27. model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	availability encodingDesc event model.divPart org particDesc person place publicationStmt settingDesc sourceDesc
Members	p

Appendix A.2.28. model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name]] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno

Appendix A.2.29. model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>bibl</u> <u>model.phrase</u>
Members	model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional

Appendix A.2.30. model.paraPart

model.paraPart groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [3.1. Paragraphs]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>macro.paraContent</u>
Members	model.gLike <u>model.global</u> [<u>model.global.edit</u> <u>model.global.meta</u> <u>model.milestoneLike</u> <u>model.noteLike</u> [<u>note</u>]] <u>model.inter</u> [<u>model.attributable</u> [<u>model.quoteLike</u>] <u>model.biblLike</u> [<u>bibl</u>] <u>model.egLike</u> <u>model.labelLike</u> [<u>desc</u>] <u>model.listLike</u> [<u>list</u> <u>listEvent</u> <u>listOrg</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>listPlace</u>] <u>model.oddDecl</u> <u>model.stageLike</u>] <u>model.lLike</u> <u>model.phrase</u> [<u>model.graphicLike</u> <u>model.highlighted</u> [<u>model.emphLike</u> [<u>term</u> <u>title</u>] <u>model.hiLike</u>] <u>model.lPart</u> <u>model.pPart.data</u> [<u>model.addressLike</u> [<u>affiliation</u>] <u>model.dateLike</u> [<u>date</u>] <u>model.measureLike</u> <u>model.nameLike</u> [<u>model.nameLike.agent</u> [<u>name</u>] <u>model.offsetLike</u> <u>model.persNamePart</u> [<u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>] <u>model.placeStateLike</u> [<u>model.placeNamePart</u> [<u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>placeName</u>]] <u>eventName</u> <u>idno</u>]] <u>model.pPart.edit</u> [<u>model.pPart.editorial</u> <u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>] <u>model.pPart.msdesc</u> <u>model.phrase.xml</u> <u>model.ptrLike</u> [<u>ptr</u>] <u>model.segLike</u> <u>model.specDescLike</u>

Appendix A.2.31. model.persNamePart

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Used by	<u>model.nameLike</u>
Members	<u>forename</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>

Appendix A.2.32. model.persStateLike

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>model.personPart</u>
Members	<u>affiliation</u> <u>gender</u>
Note	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

Appendix A.2.33. model.personLike

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>event</u> <u>listPerson</u> <u>org</u> <u>particDesc</u>
Members	<u>org</u> <u>person</u>

Appendix A.2.34. model.personPart

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [16.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>person</u>
Members	<u>model.biblLike</u> [<u>bibl</u>] <u>model.eventLike</u> [<u>event</u> <u>listEvent</u>] <u>model.persStateLike</u> [<u>affiliation</u> <u>gender</u>] <u>idno</u> <u>name</u>

Appendix A.2.35. *model.phrase*

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	date macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart
Members	model.graphicLike model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike] model.l-Part model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.place-NamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr] model.segLike model.specDescLike
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

Appendix A.2.36. *model.placeLike*

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	event listPlace org place settingDesc
Members	place

Appendix A.2.37. *model.placeNamePart*

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [14.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.placeStateLike
Members	bloc country placeName

Appendix A.2.38. *model.placeStateLike*

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike place
Members	model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]

Appendix A.2.39. *model.profileDescPart*

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	profileDesc
Members	particDesc settingDesc

Appendix A.2.40. *model.ptrLike*

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Members	ptr

Appendix A.2.41. *model.publicationStmtPart.agency*

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt

Members	<u>publisher</u>
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also <code>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</code> .

Appendix A.2.42. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <code><publicationStmt></code> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>publicationStmt</u>
Members	<u>model.ptrLike</u> [<u>ptr</u>] <u>availability</u> <u>date</u> <u>idno</u> <u>pubPlace</u>
Note	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also <code>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</code> .

Appendix A.2.43. model.resource

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>TEI</u>
Members	<u>text</u>

Appendix A.2.44. model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>model.biblPart</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
Members	<u>editor</u> <u>respStmt</u>

Appendix A.2.45. model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>teiHeader</u>
Members	<u>encodingDesc</u> <u>profileDesc</u>

Appendix A.3. Attribute classes

Appendix A.3.1. att.anchoring

att.anchoring (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>note</u>
Attributes	<p>anchored (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.truthValue</u></p> <p>Default true</p> <p>Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The <i>anchored</i></p>

	<p>attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the <i>n</i> attribute.</p> <p>targetEnd (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p>Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 17.2.4.6. range().</p>
Example	<pre><p>(…) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuor temporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234"/> totaliter expectandi...</p> <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234"> <note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days. </note> <note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne. </note> </noteGrp></pre>

Appendix A.3.2. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a <i>canonical reference</i> as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>ptr term</u>
Attributes	<p>cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.text</u></p> <p>Note The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 17.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.</p> <p>The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute.</p> <p>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.</p>

Appendix A.3.3. att.calendarSystem

att.calendarSystem provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>date</u>
Attributes	<p>calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>

	<p>Schematron <code><sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.)) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></code></p> <p>He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).</p> <p>He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>.</p> <p>Note Note that the <i>calendar</i> attribute declares the calendar system used to interpret the textual content of an element, as it appears on an original source. It does <i>not</i> modify the interpretation of the normalization attributes provided by <code>att.data.table.w3c</code>, <code>att.data.table.iso</code>, or <code>att.data.table.custom</code>. Attributes from those first two classes are always interpreted as Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian dates, as per the respective standards on which they are based. The calendar system used to interpret the last (<code>att.data.table.custom</code>) may be specified with <i>datingMethod</i>.</p>
--	---

Appendix A.3.4. att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]	
Module	tei
Members	<code>att.naming[att.personal[eventName forename name placeName roleName surname] affiliation bloc country editor event pubPlace] bibl catDesc date publisher resp respStmt term title</code>
Attributes	<p>key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>teidata.text</code></p> <p><code><author> <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)" ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name> </author></code></p> <p>Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the <i>key</i> attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project.</p> <p>ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p><code><name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name></code></p> <p>Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.</p>
Example	<p>In this contrived example, a canonical reference to the same organisation is provided in four different ways.</p> <p><code><author n="1"> <name ref="http://nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-427308.html" type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name> </author></code></p>

	<pre> <author n="2"> <name ref="nzvn:427308" type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name> </author> <author n="3"> <name ref="./named_entities.xml#o427308" type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name> </author> <author n="4"> <name key="name-427308" type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name> </author> </pre> <p>The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a <code><prefixDef></code> that declares how the <code>nzvm</code> prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named <code>named_entities.xml</code> be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.</p>
Note	<p>The <i>key</i> attribute is more flexible and general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the <i>ref</i> attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.</p> <p>These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization, for interchange.</p>

Appendix A.3.5. att.cmc

att.cmc (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.	
Module	tei
Members	affiliation bibl bloc country date desc forename idno list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note p placeName ptr roleName surname term title
Attributes	<p>generatedBy (generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was generated in a CMC environment.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Schematron <code><sch:rule context="tei:*[@generatedBy]"> <sch:assert test="ancestor-or-self::tei:post">The @generatedBy attribute is for use within a <post> element.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></code></p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> human the content was ‘naturally’ typed or spoken by a human user template the content was generated after a human user activated a template for its insertion system the content was generated by the system, i.e. the CMC environment bot the content was generated by a bot, i.e. a non-human agent, typically one that is not part of the CMC environment itself unknown the content was generated by an unknown or unspecified process unfied

	<p>automatic system message in chat: user moves on to another chatroom</p> <pre><post type="event" generatedBy="system" who="#system" rend="color:blue"> <p> <name type="nickname" corresp="#A02">McMike</name> geht in einen anderen Raum: <name type="roomname">Kreuzfahrt</name> </p> </post></pre> <p>automatic system message in chat: user enters a chatroom</p> <pre><post type="event" generatedBy="system"> <p> <name type="nickname" corresp="#A08">c_bo</name> betritt den Raum. </p> </post></pre> <p>automatic system message in chat: user changes his font color</p> <pre><post type="event" generatedBy="system" rend="color:red"> <p> <name type="nickname" corresp="#A08">c_bo</name> hat die Farbe gewechselt. </p> </post></pre> <p>An automatic signature of user including an automatic timestamp (Wikipedia discussion, anonymized). The specification of <i>generatedBy</i> at the inner element <i><signed></i> is meant to override the specification at the outer element <i><post></i>. This is generally possible when the outer <i>generatedBy</i> value is "human".</p> <pre><post type="standard" generatedBy="human" indentLevel="2" synch="#t00394407" who="#WU00005582"> <p> Kurze Nachfrage: Die Hieros für den Goldnamen stammen auch von Beckerath gem. Literatur ? Grüße —</p> <signed generatedBy="template" rend="inline"> <gap reason="signatureContent"/> <time generatedBy="template">18:50, 22. Okt. 2008 (CEST)</time> </signed> </post></pre> <p>Wikipedia talk page: user signature</p> <pre><post type="written" generatedBy="human"> <!-- ... main content of posting ... --> <signed generatedBy="template"> <gap reason="signatureContent"/> <time generatedBy="template">12:01, 12. Jun. 2009 (CEST)</time> </signed> </post></pre>
--	--

Appendix A.3.6. att.dateable

att.dateable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>event</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>gender</u> <u>idno</u> <u>licence</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>resp</u> <u>title</u>
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> att.dateable.custom <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @when-custom @notBefore-custom @notAfter-custom @from-custom

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @to-custom – @datingPoint – @datingMethod <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.dateable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @when-iso – @notBefore-iso – @notAfter-iso – @from-iso – @to-iso • att.dateable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @when – @notBefore – @notAfter – @from – @to <p>period supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <code><category>s</code>, <code><date>s</code>, or <code><event>s</code>) within which the dateable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
Note	<p>This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the <code>att.dateable.w3c</code> class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the <code>att.dateable.iso</code> and <code>att.dateable.custom</code> classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.</p>

Appendix A.3.7. att.dateable.custom

att.dateable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [14.4. Dates]	
Module	namesdates
Members	<code>att.dateable[affiliation bloc country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]</code>
Attributes	<p>when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.word</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are <i>not</i> valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system</p> <pre> <p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <date when="1040-03-06" when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH </date>.</p> <p>The current world will end at the <date when="2012-12-21" when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p> <p>The Battle of Meggidu (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p> <p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date> </p> </pre>

	<p>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The <i>when-custom</i> attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.</p>
notBefore-custom	<p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
notAfter-custom	<p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
from-custom	<p>indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre><event xml:id="FIRE1" datingMethod="#julian" from-custom="1666-09-02" to-custom="1666-09-05"> <head>The Great Fire of London</head> <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part of the city of London.</p> </event></pre>
to-custom	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u></p>
datingMethod	<p>supplies a pointer to a <code><calendar></code> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <pre>Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare <date when-custom="1598" calendar="#julian" datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow Citizen of London.</pre> <p>In this example, the <i>calendar</i> attribute points to a <code><calendar></code> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <code><date></code> element is a Julian date, and the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the <i>when-custom</i> attribute value is Julian too.</p> <pre><date when="1382-06-28" when-custom="6890-06-20" datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> u### ##### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num> </date></pre> <p>In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured ‘from the creation of the world’, which is normalized (in <i>when</i>) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in <i>when-custom</i>) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.</p> <p>Note Note that the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute (unlike <i>calendar</i> defined in <i>att.datable</i>) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the <i>when-custom</i> or other <i>X-custom</i> at-</p>

	tributes), <i>not</i> the calendar of the original date in the element.
--	---

Appendix A.3.8. *att.dataable.iso*

att.dataable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601:2004 standard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	namesdates
Members	att.dataable [affiliation bloc country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]
Attributes	<p>when-iso supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.temporal.iso</p> <p>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are <i>not</i> valid W3C format normalizations.</p> <pre><date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date> <time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time> <time when-iso="14">around two</time> <time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time></pre> <p>All of the examples of the <i>when</i> attribute in the <i>att.dataable.w3c</i> class are also valid with respect to this attribute.</p> <pre>He likes to be punctual. I said <q> <time when-iso="12">around noon</time> </q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.</pre> <p>The second occurrence of <code><time></code> could have been encoded with the <i>when</i> attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurrence could not.</p> <p>notBefore-iso specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.temporal.iso</p> <p>notAfter-iso specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.temporal.iso</p> <p>from-iso indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.temporal.iso</p> <p>to-iso indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.temporal.iso</p>
Note	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>If both <i>when-iso</i> and <i>dur-iso</i> are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,</p> <pre><date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/></pre> <p>indicates the same time period as</p> <pre><date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/></pre>

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

Appendix A.3.9. att.dateable.w3c

att.dateable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	att.dateable [affiliation bloc country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]
Attributes	<p>when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.</p> <pre><p> <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date> <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time> <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time> <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date> <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date> <date when="---01">the first of the month</date> <date when="--08">August</date> <date when="2006">MMVI</date> <date when="0056">AD 56</date> <date when="-0056">56 BC</date> </p></pre> <p>This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.</p> <pre><opener> <dateline> <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName> <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date> </dateline> <salute>To Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time> </opener></pre> <p>notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c</p> <p>notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c</p> <p>from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c</p> <p>to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c</p>
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore @notAfter @from @to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.dateable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron	<code><sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule></code>
Schematron	<code><sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule></code>
Example	<code><date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date></code>
Note	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, - -mm, - -dd, yyyy-mm, or - -mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.</p> <p>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.</p>

Appendix A.3.10. att.datcat

att.datcat provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [10.5.2. Lexical View 19.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]							
Module	tei						
Members	<u>category taxonomy</u>						
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>datcat</td><td> <p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>valueDatcat</td><td> <p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>targetDatcat</td><td> <p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> </table>	datcat	<p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>	valueDatcat	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>	targetDatcat	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>
datcat	<p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>						
valueDatcat	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>						
targetDatcat	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>						
Example	<p>The example below presents the TEI encoding of the name-value pair <part of speech, common noun>, where the name (key) 'part of speech' is abbreviated as 'POS', and the value, 'common noun' is symbolized by 'NN'. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <f>. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the <i>name</i> attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol 'NN'. The <i>datcat</i> attribute relates the feature <i>name</i> (i.e., the key) to the data category 'part of speech', while the attribute <i>valueDatcat</i> relates the feature <i>value</i> to the data category <i>common noun</i>. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.</p>						

	<pre><fs> <f name="POS" datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"> <symbol valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545" value="NN"/> </f> <!-- ... --> </fs></pre> <p>'NN' is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the CLAWS-7 tagset defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the BNC Basic (C5) tagset, uses the symbol 'NN0' (rather than 'NN'). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string 'http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of <i>common noun</i>. While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0', and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category 'part of speech', it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the <i>datcat</i> attribute to reference a definition of <i>part of speech</i>. The reference taxonomy in this example is the CLARIN Concept Registry. If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter .</p> <pre><fs> <f name="POS" fVal="#commonNoun"/> <!-- ... --> </fs></pre> <p>The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an <code><fsdDecl></code> that is XIncluded as a sibling of <code><text></code> or a child of <code><encodingDesc></code>; a <code><taxonomy></code> available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an <code><fvLib></code> element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a <i>tagset</i>, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.</p> <pre><fvLib n="POS values"> <symbol xml:id="commonNoun" value="NN" datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/> <symbol xml:id="properNoun" value="NP" datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/> <!-- ... --> </fvLib></pre> <p>Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between <i>datcat</i> and <i>valueDatcat</i> in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the <code><f>/<symbol></code> complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.</p>
<p>Example</p>	<p>In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the <code><pos></code> element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of <code><f name="POS"></code> above.</p> <pre><gramGrp> <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3" valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545">NN</pos> </gramGrp></pre> <p>Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of <code><tagUsage></code>, although here, the <i>valueDatcat</i></p>

	<p>attribute should be used, because it is not the <code><tagUsage></code> element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element <code><pos></code> (or <code><case></code>, etc.) that is described by <code><tagUsage></code>:</p> <pre> <tagsDecl partial="true"> <!-- ... --> <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <tagUsage gi="pos" targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">Contains the part <tagUsage gi="case" targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-7270e215f039">Contains informat <!-- ... --> </namespace> </tagsDecl> </pre> <p>Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the <code><prefixDef></code> mechanism, as illustrated below:</p> <pre> <listPrefixDef> <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="pos" replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/> <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern="adj" replacementPattern="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-3df2d4499157"/> </listPrefixDef> <!-- ... --> <entry> <!-- ... --> <form> <orth>isotope</orth> </form> <gramGrp> <pos datcat="ccr:pos" valueDatcat="ccr:adj">adj</pos> </gramGrp> <!-- ... --> </entry> </pre> <p>This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers ‘pos’ and ‘adj’ belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in the <code><equiv></code> element that is a child of <code><elementSpec></code> or <code><attDef></code>.</p>
<p>Example</p>	<p>The <code><taxonomy></code> element is a handy tool for encoding taxonomies that are later referenced by <code>att.datcat</code> attributes, but it can also act as an intermediary device, for example holding a fragment of an external taxonomy (or ‘flattening’ an external ontology) that is relevant to the project or document at hand. (It is also imaginable that, for the purpose of the project at hand, the local <code><taxonomy></code> element combines vocabularies that originate from more than one external taxonomy or ontology.) In such cases, the <code><taxonomy></code> creates a local layer of indirection: the <code>att.datcat</code> attributes internal to the resource may reference the <code><category></code> elements stored in the header (as well as the <code><taxonomy></code> element itself), whereas these same <code><category></code> and <code><taxonomy></code> elements use <code>att.datcat</code> attributes to reference the original taxonomy or ontology.</p> <pre> <encodingDesc> <!-- ... --> <classDecl> <!-- ... --> <taxonomy xml:id="UD-SYN" datcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/index.html"> <desc> <term>UD syntactic relations</term> </desc> <category xml:id="acl" valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl.html"> <catDesc> <term>acl</term>: Clausal modifier of noun (adjectival clause)</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="acl_relcl" valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl_relcl.html"> <catDesc> <term>acl:relcl</term>: relative clause modifier</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="advcl" valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/advcl.html"> <catDesc> <term>advcl</term>: Adverbial clause modifier</catDesc> </category> </pre>

	<pre> <!-- ... --> </taxonomy> </classDecl> </encodingDesc> </pre> <p>The above fragment was excerpted from the GB subset of the ParlaMint project in April 2023, and enriched with <code>att.datcat</code> attributes for the purpose of illustrating the mechanism described here. Note that, in the ideal case, the values of <code>att.datcat</code> attributes should be persistent identifiers, and that the addressing scheme of Universal Dependencies is treated here as persistent for the sake of illustration. Note also that the contrast between <i>datcat</i> used on <code><taxonomy></code> on the one hand, and the <i>valueDatcat</i> used on <code><category></code> on the other, is not mandatory: both kinds of relations could be encoded by means of the generic <i>datcat</i> attribute, but using the former for the container and the latter for the content is more user-friendly.</p>
<p>Example</p>	<p>The <i>targetDatcat</i> attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the <i>targetLang</i> attribute of the <code>att.pointing</code> class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.</p> <pre> <fDecl name="POS" targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3" <fDescr>part of speech (morphosyntactic category)</fDescr> <vRange> <vAlt> <symbol value="NN" datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecebe6861545"/> <symbol value="NP" datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/> <!-- ... --> </vAlt> </vRange> </fDecl> </pre> <p>Above, the <code><fDecl></code> uses <i>targetDatcat</i>, because if it were to use <i>datcat</i>, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category <i>part of speech</i>, whereas it is not — it models a container (<code><f></code>) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the <code><f></code> that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of <i>datcat</i> in the <code><symbol></code> element.</p>
<p>Example</p>	<p>The <code>att.datcat</code> attributes can be used for any sort of taxonomies. The example below illustrates their usefulness for describing usage domain labels in dictionaries on the example of the <i>Dicionário da Língua Portuguesa</i> by António de Moraes Silva, retro-digitised in the MORDigital project.</p> <pre> <!-- in the dictionary header --><encodingDesc> <classDecl> <taxonomy xml:id="domains"> <!--...--> <category xml:id="domain.medical_and_health_sciences"> <catDesc xml:lang="en">Medical and Health Sciences</catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="pt">Ciências Médicas e da Saúde</catDesc> <category xml:id="domain.medical_and_health_sciences.medicine" valueDatcat="https://vocabs.rossio.fcsh.unl.pt/pub/morais_domains/pt/page/0025"> <catDesc xml:lang="en"> <term>Medicine</term> <gloss> <!--...--> </gloss> </catDesc> <catDesc xml:lang="pt"> <term>Medicina</term> <gloss> <!--...--> </gloss> </catDesc> </category> </category> <!--...--> </taxonomy> </classDecl> </encodingDesc> <!-- inside an <entry> element: --> <usg type="domain" valueDatcat="#domain.medical_and_health_sciences.medicine">Med.</usg> </pre> <p>In the Moraes dictionary, the relevant domain labels are in the header, getting referenced inside the dictionary, from <code><usg></code> elements. The vocabulary used for dictionary-internal la-</p>

	<p>bellings is in turn anchored in the MorDigital controlled vocabulary service of the NOVA University of Lisbon – School of Social Sciences and Humanities (NOVA FCSH).</p>
Note	<p>The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.</p> <p>A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.</p> <p>In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair <code><part-of-speech, common-noun></code>, namely <code><pos>commonNoun</pos></code> and <code>pos="common-noun"</code>, one would classify the element <code><pos></code> and the attribute <code>pos</code> as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of <code><pos></code> or the value of <code>pos</code> would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.</p> <p>The <code>att.datcat</code> class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the <code><pos></code> element and the <code>pos</code> attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept <i>part of speech</i>).</p> <p>The value of the <code>att.datcat</code> attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, CLARIN CCR, OLiA, or TermWeb's DatCatInfo, and also the Universal Dependencies inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.</p> <p>Historically, <i>datcat</i> and <i>valueDatcat</i> originate from the (now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI <code>att.datcat</code> as an example.</p> <p>Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of <code>att.datcat</code> attributes: the <code><fDecl></code> element, which is a natural bearer of the <i>targetDatcat</i> attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.</p>

Appendix A.3.11. *att.declarable*

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose <i>decls</i> attribute. [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
Module	tei
Members	availability bibl listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace particDesc settingDesc sourceDesc
Attributes	<p>default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.truthValue</p> <p>Legal values true</p> <p>are: This element is selected if its parent is selected</p> <p>false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]</p>
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a <i>default</i> attribute with a value of true.

Appendix A.3.12. *att.declaring*

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]
--

Module	tei
Members	body p ptr term text
Attributes	<p>decls (declarations) identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p>
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

Appendix A.3.13. *att.dimensions*

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
Module	tei
Members	date
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.ranging <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @atLeast – @atMost – @min – @max – @confidence <p>unit names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <p>cm (centimetres)</p> <p>mm (millimetres)</p> <p>in (inches)</p> <p>line lines of text</p> <p>char (characters) characters of text</p> <p>quantity specifies the length in the units specified</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.numeric</p> <p>extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.text</p> <p><code><gap extent="5 words"/></code></p> <p><code><height extent="half the page"/></code></p> <p>precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.certainty</p>

	scope	<p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Sample values include: all measurement applies to all instances.</p> <p>most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.</p> <p>range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.</p>
--	-------	---

Appendix A.3.14. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.		
Module	tei	
Members	<u>bibl</u>	
Attributes	status	<p>describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Sample values include: ap-proved</p> <p>can-di-date</p> <p>cleared</p> <p>dep-re-cat-ed</p> <p>draft [Default]</p> <p>em-bar-goed</p> <p>ex-pired</p> <p>frozen</p> <p>gal-ley</p> <p>pro-posed</p> <p>pub-lished</p> <p>rec-om-men-da-tion</p>

	<p>sub- mit- ted</p> <p>un- fin- ished</p> <p>with- drawn</p>
Example	<pre><revisionDesc status="published"> <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/> <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/> <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/> <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/> <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/> </revisionDesc></pre>

Appendix A.3.15. *att.editLike*

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.1. Origination 14.3.2. The Person Element 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]	
Module	tei
Members	affiliation date event eventName gender name org person place placeName
Attributes	<p>evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <p>in- there is internal evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p>ex- there is external evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p>con- the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.</p> <p>instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.xTruthValue</p> <p>Default false</p>
Note	<p>The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.</p> <p>Each pointer on the <i>source</i> (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.</p>

Appendix A.3.16. *att.fragmentable*

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
Module	tei

Members	p	
Attributes	part	<p>specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Legal values Y are: (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect</p> <p>N (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]</p> <p>I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element</p> <p>M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element</p> <p>F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element</p> <p>Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.</p>

Appendix A.3.17. att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
Module	tei
Members	TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher resp respStmt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmt
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @corresp – @synch – @sameAs – @copyOf – @next – @prev – @exclude – @select • att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @rend – @style – @rendition • att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @cert

- @resp
- att.global.source
- @source

xml:id	(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
Status	Optional
Datatype	ID
Note	The <i>xml:id</i> attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.
n	(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
Status	Optional
Datatype	<u>teidata.text</u>
Note	The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.
xml:lang	(language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47.
Status	Optional
Datatype	<u>teidata.language</u>
	<pre><p> ... The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.</p></pre>
Note	<p>The <i>xml:lang</i> value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify <i>xml:lang</i> at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <u><teiHeader></u> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.</p> <p>Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of <i>xml:lang</i>.</p> <p>The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.</p> <p>The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <u><language></u> element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETF/Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p>
xml:base	provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.
Status	Optional
Datatype	<u>teidata.pointer</u>

	<pre> <div type="bibl"> <head>Selections from <title level="m">The Collected Letters of Robert Southey. Part 1: 17 </head> <listBibl xml:base="https://romantic-circles.org/sites/default/files/imported/editions/sou <bibl> <ref target="letterEEd.26.3.xml"> <title>Robert Southey to Grosvenor Charles Bedford</title>, <date when="1792-04-03">3 April 1792</date> </ref> </bibl> <bibl> <ref target="letterEEd.26.57.xml"> <title>Robert Southey to Anna Seward</title>, <date when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793</date> </ref> </bibl> <bibl> <ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml"> <title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>, <date from="1794-04-05" to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>. </ref> </bibl> </listBibl> </div> </pre>	
xml:space	<p>signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Legal values are: faults signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable</p> <p>pre-serv indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space</p> <p>Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.</p>	

Appendix A.3.18. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]		
Module	linking	
Members	att.global [TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc event eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher resp respStmnt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmnt]	
Attributes	<p>corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p>	<pre> <group> <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1" xml:lang="mi"> <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1"> <div type="chapter"> <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head> <p>...</p> </div> </body> </text> <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2" xml:lang="en"> <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1" corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"> <div type="chapter"> <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head> <p>...</p> </div> </body> </text> </pre>

```
</group>
```

In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"
corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">London</placeName>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
      allegorical character in mayoral shows.
    </p>
  </note>
</person>
```

In this example, a `<place>` element containing information about the city of London is linked with two `<person>` elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

synch	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>
sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>teidata.pointer</code></p>
copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.</p>
next	<p>points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
prev	<p>(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>

	exclude	points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element. Status Optional Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
	select	selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected. Status Optional Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

Appendix A.3.19. att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]		
Module	tei	
Members	att.global[TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc event eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher resp respStmt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmt]	
Attributes	rend	<p>(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre><head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head></pre> <p>Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the <i>rend</i> attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the <i>rend</i> attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.</p>
	style	<p>contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.text</u></p> <pre><head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head></pre> <p>Note Unlike the attribute values of <i>rend</i>, which uses white-space as a separator, the <i>style</i> attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.</p>

	<p>The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <code><styleDefDecl></code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>If <i>style</i> and <i>rendition</i> are both present on an element, then <i>style</i> overrides or complements <i>rendition</i>. <i>style</i> should not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.</p>
rendition	<p>points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p> <pre><head rendition="#ac #sc"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head> <!-- elsewhere... --> <rendition xml:id="sc" scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition> <rendition xml:id="normal" scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition> <rendition xml:id="ac" scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition></pre> <p>Note The <i>rendition</i> attribute is used in a very similar way to the <i>class</i> attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.</p> <p>If <i>rendition</i> is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>. Where both <i>rendition</i> and <i>rend</i> are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.</p> <p>Each URI provided should indicate a <code><rendition></code> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the <i>scheme</i> attribute.</p>

Appendix A.3.20. att.global.responsibility

<p>att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 18.3. Spans and Interpretations 14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]</p>					
Module	tei				
Members	att.global [TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc event eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher resp respStmt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmt]				
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>cert</td><td> <p>(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.probCert</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>resp</td><td> <p>(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p> <p>Note To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<code><person></code> or <code><org></code>) but to</p> </td></tr> </table>	cert	<p>(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.probCert</p>	resp	<p>(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p> <p>Note To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<code><person></code> or <code><org></code>) but to</p>
cert	<p>(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.probCert</p>				
resp	<p>(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</p> <p>Note To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<code><person></code> or <code><org></code>) but to</p>				

	a <respStmt> , <author> , <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt> s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).
Example	Blessed are the <choice> <sic>cheesemakers</sic> <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr> </choice>; for they shall be called the children of God.
Example	<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg> <!-- ... --> <l>Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing sla<choice> <sic>n</sic> <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr> </choice>es,</l> <!-- ... --> </lg> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"> <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp> <name>Janelle Jenstad</name> </respStmt>

Appendix A.3.21. att.global.source

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]											
Module	tei										
Members	att.global [TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc event eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher resp respStmt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmt]										
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>source</td><td>specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr> <tr> <td>Datatype</td><td>1-# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space</td></tr> <tr> <td>Schematron</td><td><sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source), ' ')"/> <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef self::tei:dataRef self::tei:elementRef self::tei:macroRef self::tei:moduleRef self::tei:schemaSpec) and \$srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count(\$srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule></td></tr> <tr> <td>Note</td><td> <p>The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form <i>tei:x.y.z</i>, where <i>x.y.z</i> indicates the version number, e.g. <i>tei:4.3.2</i> for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) <i>tei:current</i> for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.</p> </td></tr> </table>	source	specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.	Status	Optional	Datatype	1-# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space	Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source), ' ')"/> <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef self::tei:dataRef self::tei:elementRef self::tei:macroRef self::tei:moduleRef self::tei:schemaSpec) and \$srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count(\$srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule>	Note	<p>The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form <i>tei:x.y.z</i>, where <i>x.y.z</i> indicates the version number, e.g. <i>tei:4.3.2</i> for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) <i>tei:current</i> for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.</p>
source	specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.										
Status	Optional										
Datatype	1-# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space										
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source), ' ')"/> <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef self::tei:dataRef self::tei:elementRef self::tei:macroRef self::tei:moduleRef self::tei:schemaSpec) and \$srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count(\$srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule>										
Note	<p>The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form <i>tei:x.y.z</i>, where <i>x.y.z</i> indicates the version number, e.g. <i>tei:4.3.2</i> for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) <i>tei:current</i> for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.</p>										

	When used on elements describing schema components, <i>source</i> should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.
Example	<pre><p> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012"> term.</quote> <!-- ... --> </p></pre>
Example	<pre><p> <!-- ... --> <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote> <!-- ... --> </p> <!-- ... --> <bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"> <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>, <edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope> </bibl></pre>
Example	<pre><elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/></pre> <p>Include in the schema an element named <code><p></code> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.</p>
Example	<pre><schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </schemaSpec></pre> <p>Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.</p>

Appendix A.3.22. att.internetMedia

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
Module	tei
Members	<u>ptr</u>
Attributes	<p>mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
Example	<p>In this example <i>mimeType</i> is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.</p> <pre><ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/></pre>
Note	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The <i>mimeType</i> attribute must have a value taken from this list.

Appendix A.3.23. att.locatable

att.locatable provides attributes for referencing locations by pointing to entries in a canonical list of places. [2.3.9. The Unit Declaration 14.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>event</u>
Attributes	<p>where indicates one or more locations by pointing to a <code><place></code> element or other canonical description.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p>

Appendix A.3.24. att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 14.3.7. Names and Nyms]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>att.personal</u> [<u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>] <u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>event</u> <u>pubPlace</u>
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @key – @ref <p>role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (<i>nym</i>) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.</p>

Appendix A.3.25. att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	tei
Members	<u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u>
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – @role – @nymRef • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * @key * @ref <p>full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p>Legal values yes</p> <p>are: (yes) the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]</p> <p>abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.</p> <p>init</p>

	(initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.
sort	(sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name. Status Optional Datatype teidata.count

Appendix A.3.26. *att.placement*

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
Module	tei
Members	note
Attributes	<p>place specifies where this item is placed.</p> <p>Status Recommended</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>Suggested values include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> top at the top of the page bottom at the foot of the page margin in the margin (left, right, or both) opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page overleaf on the other side of the leaf above above the line right to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure below below the line left to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume. in-line within the body of the text. in-space a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe. <pre><add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add> <add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add> <note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note></pre>

Appendix A.3.27. *att.pointing*

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei	
Members	licence note ptr term	
Attributes	<p>targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by <i>target</i>, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.language</p> <p>Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"><sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule></p> <pre><linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp"> <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr" target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head" type="tuv" targetLang="pl"/> <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr" target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head" type="tuv" targetLang="sw"/> </linkGrp></pre> <p>In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the <i>Universal Declaration of Human Rights</i>: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.</p> <p>Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p>	<p>target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype 1-# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.</p>
	<p>evaluate (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Legal values all are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer. one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer. none 	

	no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.
Note	If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

Appendix A.3.28. att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.											
Module	tei										
Members	att.dimensions[date]										
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>atLeast</td><td>gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</td></tr> <tr> <td>atMost</td><td>gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</td></tr> <tr> <td>min</td><td>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</td></tr> <tr> <td>max</td><td>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</td></tr> <tr> <td>confidence</td><td>specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range. Status Optional Datatype teidata.probability</td></tr> </table>	atLeast	gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric	atMost	gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric	min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric	max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric	confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i> , or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range. Status Optional Datatype teidata.probability
atLeast	gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric										
atMost	gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric										
min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric										
max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric										
confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i> , or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range. Status Optional Datatype teidata.probability										
Example	<pre>The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"> <gap reason="illegible" extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.</pre>										
Example	<pre>Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided <measure atLeast="120000000" unit="USD" commodity="currency">more than \$120m</measure> in aid to Ukrainians.</pre>										

Appendix A.3.29. att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]			
Module	tei		
Members	bibl event idno item list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace org person place term		
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>sortKey</td><td>supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it. Status Optional Datatype teidata.word</td></tr> </table> <pre>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term> </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first</pre>	sortKey	supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it. Status Optional Datatype teidata.word
sortKey	supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it. Status Optional Datatype teidata.word		

	cousin.
Note	<p>The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent</p> <p>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for <i>4-H</i> will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and <i>McCoy</i> may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while <i>A1</i>, <i>A4</i>, and <i>A5</i> may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.</p>

Appendix A.3.30. att.typed

<p>att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 18.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 17.1.1. Pointers and Links 17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]</p>					
Module	tei				
Members	<p>TEI affiliation bibl bloc country date desc event eventName forename gender idno list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org place placeName ptr roleName surname term text title</p>				
Attributes	<table> <tr> <td>type</td><td> <p>characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <pre><div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l> <l>...</l> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l> <l>...</l> </lg> </div></pre> <p>Note The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>subtype</td><td> <p>(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Note The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.</p> </td></tr> </table>	type	<p>characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <pre><div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l> <l>...</l> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l> <l>...</l> </lg> </div></pre> <p>Note The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p>	subtype	<p>(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Note The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.</p>
type	<p>characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <pre><div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l> <l>...</l> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l> <l>...</l> </lg> </div></pre> <p>Note The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p>				
subtype	<p>(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Note The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.</p>				
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>				
Note	<p>When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <code><valList></code> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .</p>				

Appendix A.3.31. att.written

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]							
Module	tei						
Members	<u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>text</u>						
Attributes	<table><tr><td>hand</td><td>points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</td></tr><tr><td>Status</td><td>Optional</td></tr><tr><td>Datatype</td><td><u>teidata.pointer</u></td></tr></table>	hand	points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.	Status	Optional	Datatype	<u>teidata.pointer</u>
hand	points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.						
Status	Optional						
Datatype	<u>teidata.pointer</u>						

Appendix A.4. Macros

Appendix A.4.1. macro.limitedContent

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>desc</u>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_macro.limitedContent = (text tei_model.limitedPhrase tei_model.inter)*</pre>

Appendix A.4.2. macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>p</u> <u>title</u>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.paraPart"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_macro.paraContent = (text tei_model.paraPart)*</pre>

Appendix A.4.3. macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>affiliation</u> <u>bloc</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>eventName</u> <u>forename</u> <u>gender</u> <u>name</u> <u>nameLink</u> <u>placeName</u> <u>pub-Place</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>roleName</u> <u>surname</u> <u>term</u>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.attributable"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> </alternate> </content></pre>

	<pre> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_macro.phraseSeq = (text tei_model.gLike tei_model.attributable tei_model.phrase tei_model.global)* </pre>

Appendix A.4.4. *macro.phraseSeq.limited*

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>resp</u>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text tei_model.limitedPhrase tei_model.global) * </pre>

Appendix A.4.5. *macro.specialPara*

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>item</u> <u>licence</u> <u>note</u>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_macro.specialPara = (text tei_model.gLike tei_model.phrase tei_model.inter tei_model.divPart tei_model.global)* </pre>

Appendix A.5. Datatypes

Appendix A.5.1. *teidata.certainty*

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
Module	tei
Used by	<u>teidata.probCert</u>
Content model	

	<pre> <content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.certainty = "high" "medium" "low" "unknown" </pre>
Note	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

Appendix A.5.2. teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger </pre>
Note	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

Appendix A.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+"/> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+" } </pre>
Example	<pre><time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date></pre>
Example	<pre><time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time></pre>
Note	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see ISO 8601 <i>Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times</i>.</p>

Appendix A.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> </pre>

	<pre><dataRef name="duration"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration</pre>
Example	<pre><time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur="P7D">a week</date></pre>
Example	<pre><time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time></pre>
Note	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see the W3C specification.</p>

Appendix A.5.5. *teidata.enumerated*

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p><u>teidata.gender</u> <u>teidata.sex</u>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>affiliation</u>/@type • <u>availability</u>/@status • <u>desc</u>/@type • <u>idno</u>/@type • <u>list</u>/@type • <u>org</u>/@role • <u>person</u>/@role • <u>person</u>/@age • <u>title</u>/@type • <u>title</u>/@level
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word</pre>
Note	<p>Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.</p> <p>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.</p>

Appendix A.5.6. *teidata.gender*

teidata.gender defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>gender</u>/@value • <u>person</u>/@gender
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/> </content></pre>

Declaration	<code>tei_teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated</code>
Note	<p>Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p> <p>Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. <gen>, <i>msd</i> as defined in <i>att.linguistic</i>, and 10.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms).</p>

Appendix A.5.7. *teidata.language*

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <dataRef name="language"/> <valList> <valItem ident=""/> </valList> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<code>tei_teidata.language = xsd:language ("")</code>
Note	<p>The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.</p> <p>A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or <i>subtags</i> separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.</p> <p>language</p> <p>The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.</p> <p>script</p> <p>The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.</p> <p>region</p> <p>Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.</p> <p>variant</p> <p>An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.</p> <p>extension</p> <p>An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension T indicates that the content was transformed. For example en-t-it could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension U can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational RFC 6067.</p> <p>private use</p> <p>An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These</p>

	<p>should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <code><language></code> element must be present in the TEI header.</p> <p>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.</p> <p>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with <code>x-</code>, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <code><language></code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>Examples include</p> <p>sn Shona</p> <p>zh-TW Taiwanese</p> <p>zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong</p> <p>en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone</p> <p>pl Polish</p> <p>es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico</p> <p>es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America</p> <p>The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.</p>
--	---

Appendix A.5.8. *teidata.name*

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.name = xsd:Name</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

Appendix A.5.9. *teidata.numeric*

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[0-9]+\-?[0-9]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.numeric = xsd:double token { pattern = "(\-?[0-9]+\-?[0-9]+)" } xsd:decimal</pre>
Note	Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

	<p>To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.</p> <p>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.</p>
--	--

Appendix A.5.10. *teidata.outputMeasurement*

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\-+]?[d+](\.[d+])?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex ch rem vw vh vmin vmax)"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.outputMeasurement = token { pattern = "[\-+]?[d+](\.[d+])?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex ch rem vw vh vmin vmax) "</pre>
Example	<pre><figure> <head>The TEI Logo</head> <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc> <graphic height="600px" width="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/> </figure></pre>
Note	These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

Appendix A.5.11. *teidata.pattern*

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.pattern = token</pre>
Note	<p>A regular expression, often called a <i>pattern</i>, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings <i>Handel</i>, <i>Händel</i>, and <i>Haendel</i> can be described by the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> <i>matches</i> each of the three strings)</p> <p>Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.</p>

Appendix A.5.12. *teidata.pointer*

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.	
Module	tei

Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }</pre>
Note	<p>The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 <i>Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax</i>. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 <i>Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs)</i> mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://-mr---nx.mirbg4-n###.#####-#####.####/ is encoded as http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/</p>

Appendix A.5.13. *teidata.probCert*

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/> <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probability teidata.certainty</pre>

Appendix A.5.14. *teidata.probability*

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="double"> <dataFacet name="minInclusive" value="0"/> <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" value="1"/> </dataRef> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double</pre>
Note	<p>Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing <i>certainly false</i> and 1 representing <i>certainly true</i>.</p>

Appendix A.5.15. *teidata.replacement*

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <textNode/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.replacement = text</pre>

Appendix A.5.16. *teidata.sex*

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.	
Module	tei

Used by	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>person/@sex</code>
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated</pre>
Note	Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Appendix A.5.17. *teidata.temporal.iso*

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction=" [0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/ :+\\-] + " /> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.temporal.iso = xsd:date xsd:gYear xsd:gMonth xsd:gDay xsd:gYearMonth xsd:gMonthDay xsd:time xsd:dateTime token { pattern = " [0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/ :+\\-] + " }</pre>
Note	<p>If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.</p> <p>For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a <i>basic</i> and an <i>extended</i> format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.</p>

Appendix A.5.18. *teidata.temporal.w3c*

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =</pre>

	<pre> xsd:date xsd:gYear xsd:gMonth xsd:gDay xsd:gYearMonth xsd:gMonthDay xsd:time xsd:dateTime </pre>
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

Appendix A.5.19. teidata.text

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <dataRef name="string"/> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.text = string </pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

Appendix A.5.20. teidata.truthValue

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean </pre>
Note	<p>The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.</p> <p>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.</p>

Appendix A.5.21. teidata.version

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TEI/@version
Content model	<pre> <content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="\d+(\.\d+){0,2}" /> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> tei_teidata.version = token { pattern = "\d+(\.\d+){0,2}" } </pre>
Note	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (https://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and full-stop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

Appendix A.5.22. teidata.versionNumber

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
Module	tei

Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" /> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = " [\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }</pre>

Appendix A.5.23. teidata.word

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.enumerated
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = " [^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Appendix A.5.24. teidata.xTruthValue

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="boolean"/> <valList> <valItem ident="unknown"/> <valItem ident="inapplicable"/> </valList> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean ("unknown" "inapplicable")</pre>
Note	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

Appendix A.5.25. teidata.xpath

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <textNode/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>tei_teidata.xpath = text</pre>
Note	<p>Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2..</p> <p>When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.</p>